

FORD **BRONCO** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2022

All rights reserved.

Part Number: CG3977en-202208-20220819160915

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Publication	13
Using This Publication	14

Symbols Glossary

Symbols Used on Your Vehicle	15
------------------------------------	----

Data Privacy

Data Privacy	18
Service Data	19
Event Data	19
Settings Data	20
Connected Vehicle Data	20
Mobile Device Data	20

Environment

Protecting the Environment	22
----------------------------------	----

Visual Search

Steering Wheel	23
Instrument Panel	24
Center Console	25
Vehicle Interior	26
Front Exterior	27
Rear Exterior	28

Child Safety

Child Safety Precautions	29
Child Restraint Anchor Points	30
Child Restraints	31
Installing Child Restraints	34
Booster Seats	36
Child Safety Locks	37

Seatbelts

Seatbelt Precautions	38
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts	38
Automatic Locking Mode	38

Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy	39
Seatbelt Reminder	39

Airbags

How Do the Front Airbags Work	41
How Do the Side Airbags Work	41
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work	42
Airbag Precautions	43
Front Passenger Sensing System	44

Keys and Remote Controls

Remote Control Limitations	47
Using the Remote Control	47
Removing the Key Blade	47
Sounding the Panic Alarm	47
Locating Your Vehicle	48
Changing the Remote Control Battery	48
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control	49
Programming the Remote Control	50
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting	51

MyKey™

What Is MyKey	52
MyKey Settings	52
Creating a MyKey	53
Programming a MyKey	54
Clearing All MyKeys	54
Checking MyKey System Status	54
MyKey – Troubleshooting	54

Doors and Locks

Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle	56
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle	56
Autounlock	56

Table of Contents

Autolock	56
Mislock	57
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting	57

Keyless Entry

What Is Keyless Entry	59
Keyless Entry Limitations	59
Keyless Entry Settings	59
Using Keyless Entry	59
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting	60

Tailgate

Tailgate Precautions	61
Opening the Tailgate	61
Closing the Tailgate	61
Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate	61
Slide Out Tailgate	63
Tailgate – Troubleshooting	63

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System	65
Security – Troubleshooting	65

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel	67
Horn	67
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off	67

Wipers and Washers

Wipers	68
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off	68
Reverse Wipe	68
Checking the Wiper Blades	69
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades	69
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades	70
Washers	70

Wipers and Washers – Troubleshooting	71
--	----

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lighting Control	72
Headlamps	72
Headlamps – Troubleshooting	72
Autolamps	73
Exterior Lamps	73
Automatic High Beam Control	74
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting	76
Adaptive Front Lighting	77

Interior Lighting

Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off	78
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off	78
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off	78
Interior Lamp Function	78
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness	79
Ambient Lighting	79
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting	79

Windows

Opening and Closing the Windows	80
Global Opening	80
Window Bounce-Back	81
Locking the Rear Window Controls	81

Interior Mirror

Interior Mirror Precautions	82
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror	82

Exterior Mirrors

Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors	83
Folding the Exterior Mirrors	83

Table of Contents

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen	84
Tachometer	84
Speedometer	84
Fuel Gauge	84
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge	85
Transmission Fluid Temperature Gauge	85
What Is the Information Bar	85
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	85
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps	85
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators	87
Instrument Cluster Indicators	87

Instrument Cluster Display

Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls	90
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu	90
Trip Computer	91
Customizing the Instrument Cluster Display	91
Personalized Settings	91

Climate Control

Identifying the Climate Control Unit	93
Switching Climate Control On and Off	93
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off	93
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off	93
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off	93
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off	93
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off	94
Setting the Blower Motor Speed	94

Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off	94
Setting the Temperature	94
Directing the Flow of Air	94
Auto Mode	95
Climate Control Hints	96

Interior Air Quality

What Is the Cabin Air Filter	98
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter	98

Front Seats

Front Seat Precautions	99
Sitting in the Correct Position	99
Power Seats	100
Heated Seats	102

Rear Seats

Manual Seats	104
--------------------	-----

Rear Occupant Alert System

What is the Rear Occupant Alert System	106
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work	106
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions	106
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations	106
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off	106
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators	107
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings	107

USB Ports

Locating the USB Ports	108
Playing Media Using the USB Port	108
Charging a Device	108

Table of Contents

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	110
Power Outlet Precautions	110
Locating the Power Outlets	110
Power Outlet Indicators	110

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

What Is the Power Outlet	112
Power Outlet Precautions	112
Locating the Power Outlets	112

Wireless Accessory Charger

What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger	113
Wireless Accessory Charger Precautions	113
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger	113
Charging a Wireless Device	113

Storage

Glove Compartment	114
Center Console	114
Under Floor Storage	115
Glasses Holder	115
Map Pocket	115

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions	116
Push Button Ignition Switch	116
Starting the Engine	117
Stopping the Engine	117
Automatic Engine Stop	118
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position	119
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting	119

Auto-Start-Stop

What Is Auto-Start-Stop	122
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions	122
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off	122
Stopping the Engine	122
Restarting the Engine	122
Auto-Start-Stop Indicators	122
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting	123

Fuel and Refueling

Fuel and Refueling Precautions	125
Fuel Quality	125
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel	126
Running Out of Fuel	126
Refueling	127
Fuel Tank Capacity	129
Fuel Consumption Regulations	129
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting	130

Catalytic Converter

What Is the Catalytic Converter	131
Catalytic Converter Precautions	131
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting	131

Automatic Transmission

Automatic Transmission Precautions	132
Automatic Transmission Positions	132
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear	133
Automatic Transmission Position Indicators	133
Manually Shifting Gears	133
Automatic Transmission Audible Warnings	134

Table of Contents

Four-Wheel Drive

How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement	135
How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode	135
Four-Wheel Drive Precautions	135
Four-Wheel Drive Limitations	136
Switching Four-Wheel Drive On and Off	137
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement	137
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode	138
Four-Wheel Drive Modes	139
Four-Wheel Drive Indicators	140
Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and Specification	140
Four-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting	140

Electronic Locking Differential

What Is the Electronic Locking Differential	143
Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off	143
Electronic Locking Differential Indicators	144
Electronic Locking Differential – Troubleshooting	145

Brakes

Brake Precautions	147
Anti-Lock Braking System	147
Brake Over Accelerator	147
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir	147
Checking the Brake Fluid	147
Brake Fluid Specification	148
Brakes – Troubleshooting	148

Electric Parking Brake

What Is the Electric Parking Brake	151
--	-----

Applying the Electric Parking Brake	151
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an Emergency	151
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	151
Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake	151
Electric Parking Brake Audible Warning	152
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge	152
Electric Parking Brake – Troubleshooting	152

Hill Start Assist

What Is Hill Start Assist	154
How Does Hill Start Assist Work	154
Hill Start Assist Precautions	154
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off	154
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting	154

Traction Control

What Is Traction Control	155
How Does Traction Control Work	155
Switching Traction Control On and Off	155
Traction Control Indicator	155
Traction Control – Troubleshooting	156

Stability Control

How Does Stability Control Work	157
Switching Stability Control On and Off	158
Stability Control Indicator	159

Trail Control

What Is Trail Control	160
Trail Control Limitations	160
Switching Trail Control On and Off	160
Setting the Trail Control Speed	160

Table of Contents

Canceling the Set Speed	161
Trail Control Indicators	161
Trail One Pedal Drive	161
Trail One Pedal Drive – Troubleshooting	163
Trail Control – Troubleshooting	164

Trail Turn Assist

What Is Trail Turn Assist	165
Trail Turn Assist Precautions	165
Trail Turn Assist Limitations	165
Switching Trail Turn Assist On and Off	165
Trail Turn Assist Indicators	165
Trail Turn Assist – Troubleshooting	166

Stabilizer Bar Disconnect

What Is the Stabilizer Bar Disconnect	167
Stabilizer Bar Disconnect Precautions	167
Switching the Stabilizer Bar Disconnect On and Off	167
Stabilizer Bar Disconnect Indicators	168
Stabilizer Bar Disconnect – Troubleshooting	168

Steering

Electric Power Steering	170
Steering – Troubleshooting	170

Parking Aids

Parking Aid Precautions	173
Switching Parking Aid On and Off	173
Rear Parking Aid	174
Front Parking Aid	174
Parking Aid Indicators	176
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting	176

Rear View Camera

What Is the Rear View Camera	177
Rear View Camera Precautions	177
Locating the Rear View Camera	177
Rear View Camera Guide Lines	177
Rear View Camera Object Distance Indicators	178
Rear View Camera Settings	178

360 Degree Camera

What Is the 360 Degree Camera	180
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work	180
360 Degree Camera Precautions	180
360 Degree Camera Limitations	180
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras	181
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines	181
360 Degree Camera Settings	182

Adaptive Cruise Control

How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work	183
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions	183
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations	184
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off	186
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed	186
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap	187
Canceling the Set Speed	188
Resuming the Set Speed	188
Overriding the Set Speed	188
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators	188
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control	189
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting	189

Table of Contents

G.O.A.T. Mode Control

What Is G.O.A.T. Mode Control	191
How Does G.O.A.T. Mode Control Work	191
Selecting a G.O.A.T. Mode	191
G.O.A.T. Modes	192
G.O.A.T. Mode Control – Troubleshooting	195

Lane Keeping System

What Is the Lane Keeping System	198
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work	198
Lane Keeping System Precautions	198
Lane Keeping System Limitations	198
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off	199
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode	199
Alert Mode	199
Aid Mode	200
Alert and Aid Mode	200
Lane Keeping System Indicators	201
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting	202

Blind Spot Information System

What Is Blind Spot Information System	205
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work	205
Blind Spot Information System Precautions	205
Blind Spot Information System Limitations	205
Blind Spot Information System Requirements	205
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off	206
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors	206

Blind Spot Information System Indicators	206
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting	207

Cross Traffic Alert

What Is Cross Traffic Alert	208
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work	208
Cross Traffic Alert Precautions	208
Cross Traffic Alert Limitations	208
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off	208
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors	209
Cross Traffic Alert Indicators	209
Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting	210

Pre-Collision Assist

What Is Pre-Collision Assist	211
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work	211
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions	211
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations	212
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off	212
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors	213
Distance Indication	214
Automatic Emergency Braking	215
Evasive Steering Assist	215
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting	216

Driver Alert

What Is Driver Alert	218
How Does Driver Alert Work	218
Driver Alert Precautions	218
Driver Alert Limitations	218
Switching Driver Alert On and Off	219
Driver Alert Indicators	219

Table of Contents

Driver Alert – Troubleshooting	219
--------------------------------------	-----

Load Carrying

Load Carrying Precautions	220
Roof Rack	220

Rear Cargo Area

Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points	224
-------------------------------------	-----

Connecting a Trailer

Connecting a Trailer Precautions	225
Tow Ball	225
Connecting a Trailer	227
Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting	228

Towing a Trailer

Towing a Trailer Precautions	229
Towing a Trailer Limitations	229
Trailer Towing Hints	229
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft	230
Towing Weights and Dimensions	231
Towing a Trailer – Troubleshooting	233

Trailer Sway Control

How Does Trailer Sway Control Work	234
Trailer Sway Control Precautions	234
Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off	234

Driving Hints

Off-Road Driving	235
Cold Weather Precautions	243
Breaking-In	243
Driving Economically	243
Floor Mats	243

Crash and Breakdown Information

Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off	245
Jump Starting the Vehicle	245
Post-Crash Alert System	246
Post Impact Braking	247
Automatic Crash Shutoff	247
Recovery Towing	248
Transporting the Vehicle	250

Towing Your Vehicle

Towing Your Vehicle Precautions	251
Emergency Towing	251

Fuses

Fuse Precautions	252
Under Hood Fuse Box	252
Body Control Module Fuse Box	256
Identifying Fuse Types	259
Fuses – Troubleshooting	259

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions	260
Opening and Closing the Hood	260
Under Hood Overview - 2.7L EcoBoost™	261
Engine Oil	262
Checking the Coolant	263
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.7L EcoBoost™	267
Changing the Fuel Filter	268
12V Battery	268
12V Battery – Troubleshooting	271
Adjusting the Headlamps	272
Exterior Bulbs	274
Interior Bulbs	274
Drive Belt Routing	275

Table of Contents

Removable Vehicle Components

Removable Windows	276
Removable Doors	277
Removable Roof Panels	282
Removable Hard Top	284
Removable Fenders	285
Storing the Doors and the Roof Panels	286

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior	293
Cleaning the Interior	295
Repairing Minor Paint Damage	297
Waxing Your Vehicle	297

Storing Your Vehicle

Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage	298
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage	299

Wheel and Tire Information

Locating the Tire label	300
Using Snow Chains	300

Tire Care

Checking the Tire Pressures	302
Inflating the Tires	302
Tire Pressure Specifications	303
Inspecting the Tire for Wear	304
Inspecting the Tire for Damage	304
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems	305
Tire Rotation	305

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System	307
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions	307

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations	307
Viewing the Tire Pressures	307
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting	308

Changing a Road Wheel

Changing a Flat Tire	310
Wheel Nuts	315

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 2.7L EcoBoost™	316
Vehicle Dimensions	317
Fuel Consumption Figures	318
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification - 2.7L EcoBoost™	319
Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.7L EcoBoost™	319
Fuel Tank Capacity	320
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification	321
Washer Fluid Specification	321
Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity and Specification	322
Brake Fluid Specification	322
Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and Specification	323
Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification	323
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification	324

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number	325
Vehicle Identification Plate	325

Connected Vehicle

What Is a Connected Vehicle	327
Connected Vehicle Requirements	327
Connected Vehicle Limitations	327

Table of Contents

Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network	327
Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network	327
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting	328

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	330
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password	330
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting	331

Audio System

Audio System Precautions	332
Identifying the Audio Unit	332
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off	332
Selecting the Audio Source	332
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source	332
Adjusting the Volume	333
Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off	333
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off	333
Setting a Memory Preset	333
Muting the Audio	333
Adjusting the Sound Settings	333
Setting the Clock and Date	334
AM/FM Radio	334
Switching the Display On and Off	335
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	335

Center Display Overview

Center Display Precautions	337
Center Display Limitations	337
Status Bar	337
Feature Bar	338
Information On Demand Screen	338

Rebooting the Center Display	339
------------------------------------	-----

Voice Interaction

Ford Assistant	340
----------------------	-----

Phone

Phone Precautions	342
Connecting Your Phone	342
Phone Menu	342
Making and Receiving a Phone Call	344
Sending and Receiving a Text Message	345
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off	346

Bluetooth®

Connecting a Bluetooth® Device	347
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®	347

Apps

App Precautions	348
App Requirements	348
Accessing Apps	348
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device	348
Enabling Apps on an Android Device	348
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off	349
Switching Android Auto On and Off	349

Navigation

Connected Navigation	351
Accessing Navigation	351
Navigation Map Updates	351
Adjusting the Map	351
Live Traffic	351
Setting a Destination	352
Waypoints	352
Route Guidance	353

Table of Contents

Vehicle Software Updates

Vehicle Software Updates	354
Software Update Settings	354
Software Update Indicators	355

Vehicle System Reset

Performing a System Reset	356
---------------------------------	-----

Auxiliary Switches

What Are the Auxiliary Switches	357
Locating the Auxiliary Switches	357
Locating the Auxiliary Switch Wiring	357
Identifying the Auxiliary Switch Wiring	359

Customer Information

Rollover Warning	360
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment	360
Declaration of Conformity	360
REACH	360
Radio Frequency Certification Labels	361
Replacement Parts Recommendation	401
Mobile Communications Equipment	402
End User License Agreement	402

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility	428
-------------------------------------	-----

Introduction

ABOUT THIS PUBLICATION



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



WARNING: You risk death, fire, or serious injury to yourself and others if you do not follow the instruction highlighted by the warning symbol.

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle in order to benefit from greater safety and pleasure from driving it. Use this publication to familiarize yourself with the basics and then read the digital version, that is available in your vehicle. You can also view the comprehensive manual through the FordPass app and through the local Ford website.

Note: To download the FordPass app, visit your device's app store.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

Note: Use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on all printed owner's information when selling this vehicle.

Our digital resources include a comprehensive digital Owner's Manual dynamically created according to the features on your vehicle by using the vehicle identification number. See **Locating the Vehicle Identification Number** (page 325). The digital Owner's Manual includes visual and full text search functions so that you can quickly locate the information you are looking for. It also includes links to a number of how-to videos created to help you understand some of the advanced technologies on your vehicle.

Features and Options

This publication describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It could describe options that are not available on the vehicle you have purchased.

Illustrations

Some of the illustrations in this publication could show features as used in different models, so they could appear different to you on your vehicle.

Location of Components

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.

Introduction



- A Right-hand side.
- B Left-hand side.

USING THIS PUBLICATION

To quickly locate information about your vehicle, use the word search within the Owner's Manual application.

Symbols Glossary

SYMBOLS USED ON YOUR VEHICLE

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Airbag



Air conditioning system



Air conditioning system lubricant type



Anti-lock braking system



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks



Battery



Battery acid



Blower motor



Brake fluid - non petroleum based



Brake system



Brake system



Cabin air filter



Check fuel cap



Child safety door lock or unlock



Child seat lower anchor



Child seat tether anchor



Cruise control



Do not open when hot



Electric Parking brake



Engine air filter



Engine coolant



Engine coolant temperature



Engine oil



Explosive gas



Fan warning



Fasten seatbelt



Flammable



Front fog lamps

Symbols Glossary



Fuel pump reset



Fuse compartment



Hazard flashers



Headlamp high beams



Headlamps on



Heated rear window



Hill descent control



Horn control



Interior luggage compartment release



Jack



Keep out of reach of children



Lighting control



Low fuel level



Low tire pressure warning



Maintain correct fluid level



Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)



Note operating instructions



Panic alarm



Parking aid



Parking lamps



Passenger airbag activated



Passenger airbag deactivated



Power steering fluid



Power windows front/rear



Power window lockout



Requires registered technician



Safety alert



See Owner's Manual



See Service Manual



Side airbag

Symbols Glossary



Shield the eyes



Stability control



Stability control off



Trail control



Turn Signal



Windshield defrosting system



Windshield wiping system



Windshield wash and wipe



WARNING: Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.

We respect your privacy and are committed to protecting it. The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of release, but as technology rapidly changes, we recommend that you visit the local Ford website for the latest information.

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have data recording functionality and the ability to permanently or temporarily store data. This data could include information on the condition and status of your vehicle, vehicle maintenance requirements, events and malfunctions. The types of data that can be recorded are described in this section. Some of the data recorded is stored in event logs or error logs.

Note: *Error logs are reset following a service or repair.*

Note: *We may provide information in response to requests from law enforcement, other government authorities and third parties acting with lawful authority or through a legal process. Such information could be used by them in legal proceedings.*

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Operating states of system components, for example fuel level, tire pressure and battery charge level.
- Vehicle and component status, for example wheel speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration and seatbelt status.

- Events or errors in essential systems, for example headlamps and brakes.
- System responses to driving situations, for example airbag deployment and stability control.
- Environmental conditions, for example temperature.

Some of this data, when used in combination with other information, for example an accident report, damage to a vehicle or eyewitness statements, could be associated with a specific person.

Services That We Provide

If you use our services, we collect and use data, for example account information, vehicle location and driving characteristics, that could identify you. We transmit this data through a dedicated, protected connection. We only collect and use data to enable your use of our services to which you have subscribed, with your consent or where permitted by law. For additional information, see the terms and conditions of the services to which you have subscribed.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Services That Third Parties Provide

We recommend that you review the terms and conditions and data privacy information for any services equipped with your vehicle or to which you subscribe. We take no responsibility for services that third parties provide.

Data Privacy

SERVICE DATA

Our dealers collect service data through the data link connector in your vehicle. They use service data, for example error logs, to help them if you take your vehicle for repair. They share this data with our technical team, if required, to help with diagnosis. In addition to using the information for diagnosis and repair, we use and share service data with our service providers, for example parts suppliers, where required and where permitted by law, for continuous improvement or with other information that we have about you, for example your contact information, to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law. Our service providers are equally required by law to protect your data and retain it in accordance with data retention policies.

Note: *Third party repair facilities can also collect service data through the data link connector.*

EVENT DATA

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder. The main purpose of an event data recorder is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle; this data will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The event data recorder is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less.

The event data recorder in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled/fastened.
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.
- Where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

This data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note: *Event data recorder data is recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data is recorded by the event data recorder under normal driving conditions and no personal data or information (for example name, gender, age, and crash location) is recorded. However, parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the event data recorder data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.*

To read data recorded by an event data recorder, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the event data recorder is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have such special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the event data recorder.

SETTINGS DATA

Your vehicle has electronic control units that have the ability to store data based on your personalized settings. The data is stored locally in the vehicle or on devices that you connect to it, for example, a USB drive or digital music player. You can delete some of this data and also choose whether to share it through the services to which you subscribe.

Comfort and Convenience Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Seat and steering wheel position.
- Climate control settings.
- Radio presets.

Entertainment Data

Data recorded includes, for example:

- Music, videos or album art.
- Contacts and corresponding address book entries.
- Navigation destinations.

CONNECTED VEHICLE DATA



The modem has a SIM. The modem was enabled when your vehicle was built and periodically sends messages to stay connected to the cell phone network. Subject to your consent, the vehicle may send vehicle, driving and location data. These messages could include information that identifies your vehicle, the SIM and the electronic serial number of the modem. Cell phone network service providers could have access to additional information, for example cell phone network tower identification. For additional information about our privacy policy, visit www.FordConnected.com or refer to your local Ford website.

Note: *The modem continues to send information unless you disable the modem or stop the modem from sharing data by changing the modem settings. See **Connected Vehicle** (page 327).*

Note: *The service can be unavailable or interrupted for a number of reasons, for example environmental or topographical conditions and data plan coverage.*

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has a modem, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

MOBILE DEVICE DATA

If you connect a mobile device to your vehicle, you can display data from your device on the touchscreen for example, music and album art. You can share your vehicle data with mobile apps on your device through the system. See **App Requirements** (page 348).

The mobile apps function operates by your connected device sending data to us in the United States. The data is encrypted and includes, for example, the vehicle identification number of your vehicle, the SYNC module serial number, odometer, enabled apps, usage statistics and debugging information. We retain it only as long as necessary to provide the service, to troubleshoot, for continuous improvement and to offer you products and services that may be of interest to you according to your preferences and where allowed by law.

If you connect a cell phone to the system, the system creates a profile that links to that cell phone. The cell phone profile enables more mobile features and efficient operation. The profile contains, for example data from your phonebook, read and unread text messages and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system.

Data Privacy

If you connect a media device, the system creates and retains a media device index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity.

The cell phone profile, media device index and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when you connect your cell phone or media device. If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you use the master reset function to erase the stored information. See **Performing a System Reset** (page 356).

System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's module.

For additional information about our privacy policy, refer to the local Ford website.

Note: *To find out if your vehicle has connectivity technology, visit www.FordConnected.com.*

PROTECTING THE ENVIRONMENT

You can take significant steps toward protecting the environment with correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials.

For additional information about our sustainability progress and initiatives, visit www.sustainability.ford.com.

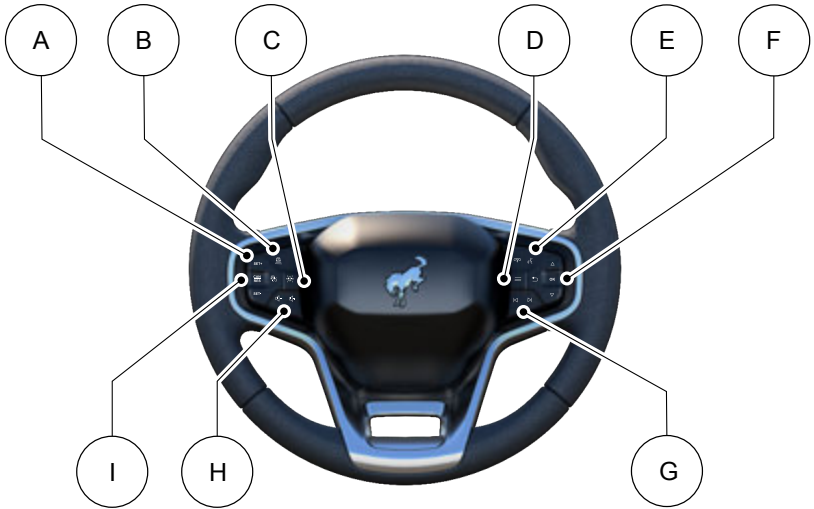
France Only



Points de collecte sur www.quefairedemesdechets.fr et www.ford.fr

Visual Search

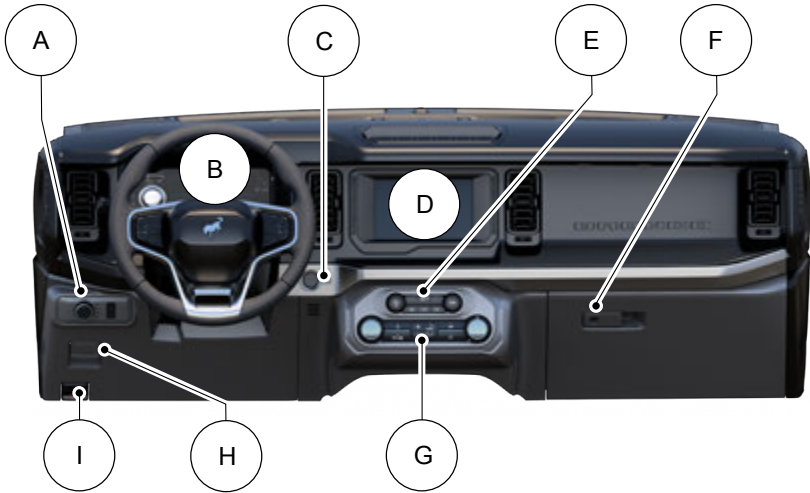
STEERING WHEEL



- A See **Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed** (page 186).
- B See **Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap** (page 187).
- C See **Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off** (page 199).
- D See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 90).
- E See **Using Ford Assistant** (page 340).
- F See **Using the Instrument Cluster Display Controls** (page 90).
- G See **Playing or Pausing the Audio Source** (page 332).
- H See **Adjusting the Volume** (page 333).
- I See **Resuming the Set Speed** (page 188).

Visual Search

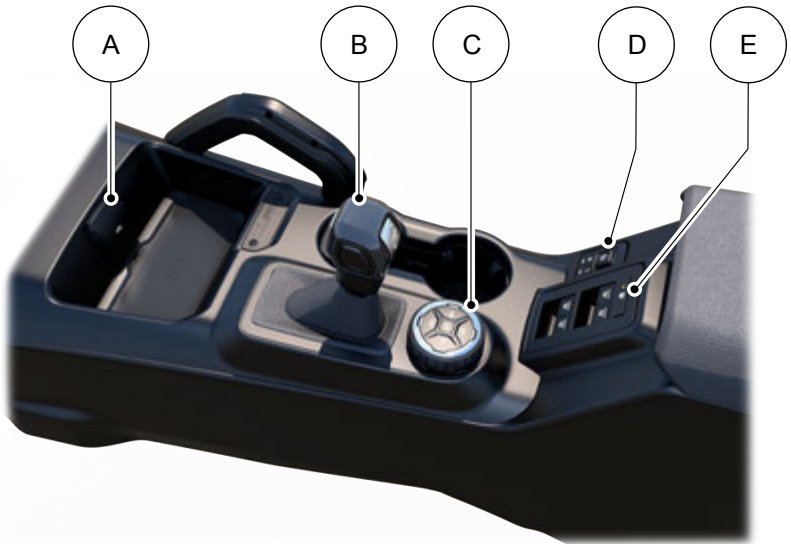
INSTRUMENT PANEL



- A See **Exterior Lighting Control** (page 72).
- B See **Instrument Cluster Overview** (page 84).
- C See **Starting a Gasoline Engine** (page 117). See **Starting a Gasoline Engine** (page 117).
- D See **Feature Bar** (page 338).
- E See **Switching the Audio Unit On and Off** (page 332).
- F See **Opening the Glove Compartment** (page 114).
- G See **Identifying the Climate Control Unit** (page 93).
- H See **Applying the Electric Parking Brake** (page 151).
- I See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 260).

Visual Search

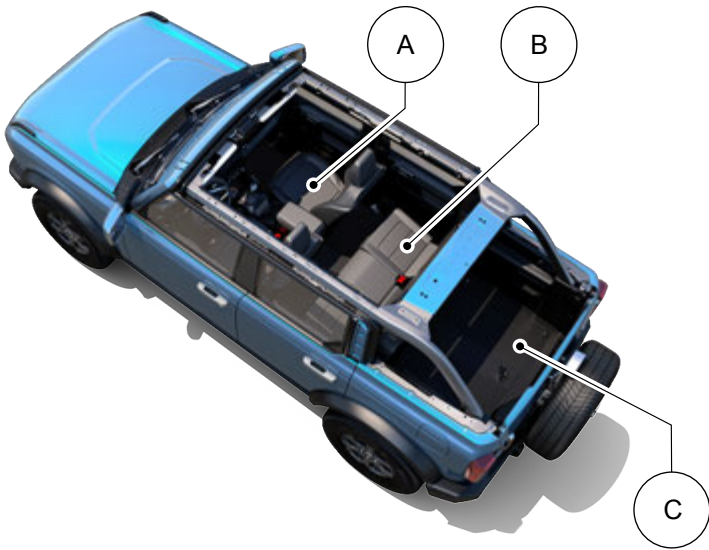
CENTER CONSOLE



- A See **Locating the Power Outlets** (page 112).
- B See **Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear** (page 133).
- C See **Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode** (page 137).
- D See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 83).
- E See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 80).

Visual Search

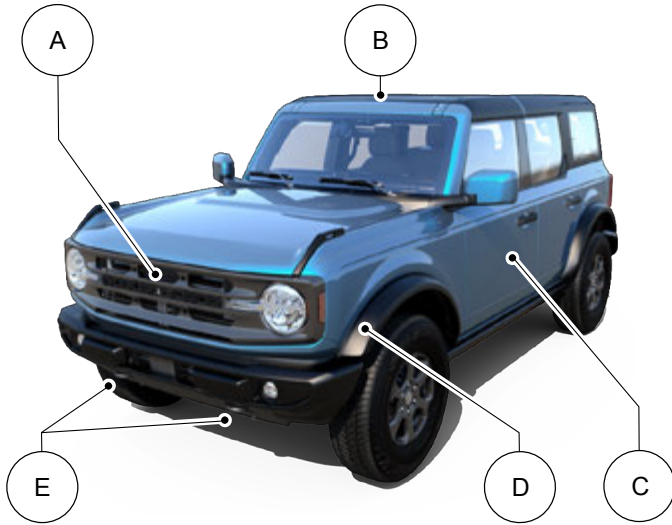
VEHICLE INTERIOR



- A See **Moving the Seat Backward and Forward** (page 101).
- B See **Adjusting the Seat Backrest** (page 105).
- C See **Locating the Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points** (page 224).

Visual Search

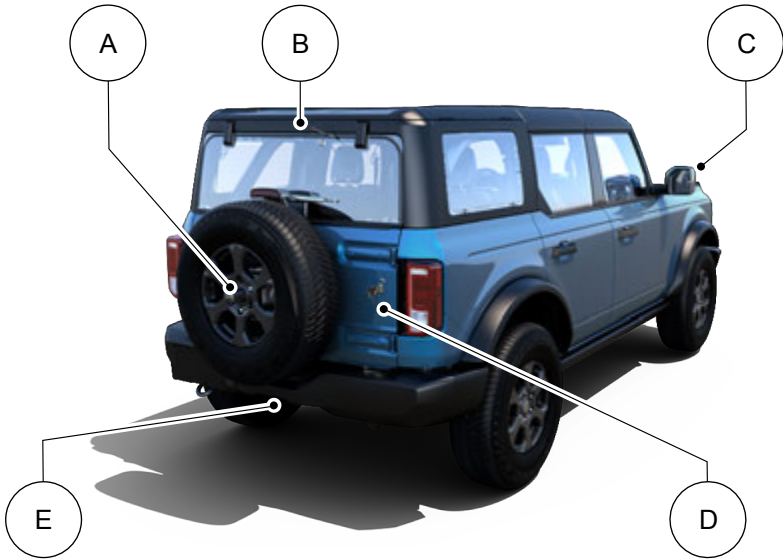
FRONT EXTERIOR



- A See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 181).
- B See **Removing and Installing the Front Roof Panel** (page 282).
- C See **Removing and Installing the Doors** (page 277).
- D See **Removing the Fender Flares** (page 285).
- E See **Accessing the Front Towing Point** (page 248).

Visual Search

REAR EXTERIOR



- A See **Changing a Flat Tire** (page 310).
- B See **Removing and Installing the Rear Roof Panel** (page 283).
- C See **Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors** (page 83).
- D See **Storing the Doors and the Roof Panels** (page 286).
- E See **Tow Bar Dimensions** (page 231).

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY PRECAUTIONS



Only child restraints certified to ECE-R44.03, or later, have been tested and approved for use in your vehicle.

Note: *Mandatory use of child restraints varies from country to country.*

⚠ WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

⚠ WARNING: Do not modify child restraints in any way.

⚠ WARNING: Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

⚠ WARNING: Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.

⚠ WARNING: Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.


⚠ WARNING: You must reinstall the head restraint following the removal of the child restraint.

⚠ WARNING: Always make sure your child is secured properly in a device that is appropriate for their height, age and weight. Child safety restraints must be bought separately from your vehicle. Failure to follow these instructions and guidelines may result in an increased risk of serious injury or death to your child.

⚠ WARNING: If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

⚠ WARNING: Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.

Child Safety

 **WARNING:** Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.

 **WARNING:** Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

WHAT ARE THE CHILD RESTRAINT ANCHOR POINTS

Anchor points allow you to quickly and safely install a child restraint.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT LOWER ANCHOR POINTS



E213581

Lower anchor points are on the rear outermost seats.

LOCATING THE CHILD RESTRAINT TOP TETHER ANCHOR POINTS



Top tether anchor points are behind the rear outermost seats.

Note: Do not use the rear seat center anchor point to attach a tether strap.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITION INFORMATION

Seating Positions	Mass Group Categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	0–10 kg	0–13 kg	9–18 kg	15–25 kg	22–36 kg
Front passenger seat with airbag ON .	X	X	UF ¹	UF ¹	UF ¹
Front passenger seat with airbag OFF .	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹	U ¹
Rear seats. ²	U	U	U	U	U

¹ We recommend that you secure children in a government approved child restraint, on the rear seat.

² Do not use a child restraint with a support leg on the rear center seat unless stated as suitable in the child restraint manufacturer's product information.

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child restraints approved for use in this mass group.

ISOFIX Child Restraints

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg	0–10 kg	0–13 kg	9–18 kg	9–18 kg
Front passenger seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					
Rear outermost seat ISOFIX.	Size class.	X	E ¹	C, D, E ¹	A, B, B1 ¹	C, D ¹

Child Safety

Seating Positions		Mass Group Categories				
		0	0	0+	1	1
		Lateral Facing	Rearward Facing	Rearward Facing	Forward Facing	Rearward Facing
		0–10 kg	0–10 kg	0–13 kg	9–18 kg	9–18 kg
	Fixture.	X	R1 ¹	R1, R2X, R2, R3 ¹	F2, F2X, F3 ¹	R2X, R2, R3 ¹
	Size type.	X	IL	IL	IL, IUF	IL
Rear center seat.	Size class.	No ISOFIX				
	Size type.					

¹The size class and fixture are defined for both universal and semi-universal child restraint systems. You can see the identification letters on ISOFIX child restraints.

IL Suitable for use with particular ISOFIX child restraint systems in the semi-universal category. Refer to the child restraint system manufacturer vehicle recommendation list for additional information.

IUF Suitable for use with forward facing ISOFIX child restraint systems in the universal category.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINTS RECOMMENDATION

Mass Group Categories	Manufacturer	Model	Attachment
0+ 0–13 kg	Britax Römer.	Baby Safe Plus with ISOFIX base. ¹	ISOFIX base or seatbelt only.
1 9–18 kg	Britax Römer.	Duo Plus. ¹	ISOFIX and top tether anchors or seatbelt only.
2 15–25 kg	Britax Römer.	KidFix. ^{1,2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.
3 22–36 kg	Britax Römer.	KidFix. ^{1,2}	ISOFIX and seatbelt or seatbelt only.

¹We recommend that you secure children using an ISOFIX child restraint on the rear outermost seats.

²We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS



WARNING: Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.

Note: Always follow the manufacturer's instructions for installing a child restraint with a top tether.



WARNING: Do not attach the top tether strap to anything other than the correct top tether strap anchor point.



WARNING: Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.



WARNING: If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



WARNING: Make sure the child restraint rests tightly against the vehicle seat. You may need to adjust the seats to properly secure the child restraint. Make sure that the seat backrest is in an upright position. It may also be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint.

When using a child restraint on a front seat, follow these seat positioning guidelines:

- The child restraint must not be in contact with the instrument panel.
- Position the passenger seat as far rearward as possible and route the seatbelt forward and downward from the B-pillar ring to the child restraint.
- If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the seatbelt without slack remaining, adjust the seat backrest to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Note: When using a child restraint on a rear seat, adjust the front seat to a position to prevent contact with the child's feet or legs.

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS

USING SEATBELTS

Note: Although the child restraint illustrated is a forward facing child restraint, the steps are the same for installing a rear facing child restraint.

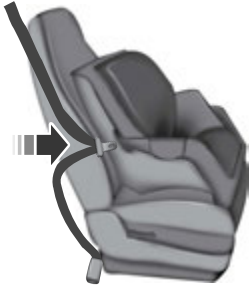
Perform the following steps when installing a child restraint with seatbelts.

1. Position the child restraint in a seat with a seatbelt.

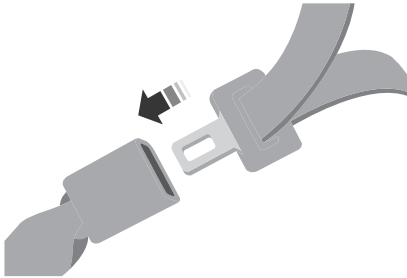


2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.

Child Safety



3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. Make sure you did not twist the belt webbing.



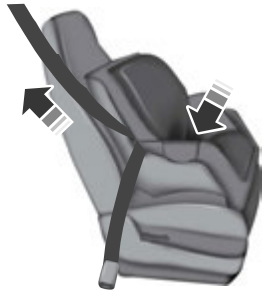
4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle for that seating position until the latch engages. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until you pull all of the seatbelt out.

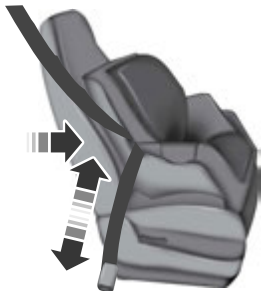
Note: The automatic locking mode is available on the front passenger and rear seats. This vehicle does not require the use of a locking clip.

6. Allow the belt to retract to remove slack. The seatbelt clicks as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.
7. Pull the seatbelt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode. You should not be able to pull more belt out. If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps 5 and 6.



Child Safety

- Remove remaining slack from the belt. Force the seat down with extra weight, for example, by pressing down or kneeling on the child restraint while pulling up on the shoulder belt in order to force slack from the belt. This is necessary to remove the remaining slack that exists once you add the extra weight of the child to the child restraint. It also helps to achieve the proper snugness of the child restraint to your vehicle. Sometimes, a slight lean toward the buckle helps to remove remaining slack from the belt.
- If the child restraint has a tether strap, attach it.



- Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly move the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place.

To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward and back. There should be no more than 2.5 cm of movement.

BOOSTER SEATS


Booster Seat



Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg but are less than 150 cm tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult seatbelt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across their hips.

Booster Cushion

**WARNING:** When using a booster cushion, make sure you adjust the vehicle head restraint on that seating position.

Child Safety



Secure children that weigh greater than 22 kg but are less than 150 cm tall on a booster cushion.

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS



WARNING: You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



A child safety lock is on the rear edge of each rear door. Switch the child safety lock separately on each door.

Left-Hand Side

Turn the key clockwise to switch the child lock on and counterclockwise to switch it off.

Right-Hand Side

Turn the key counterclockwise to switch the child lock on and clockwise to switch it off.

Note: To make sure the child safety lock is on, pull the inside door handle twice to verify the door does not open.

Note: To open the rear doors from inside the vehicle when the child lock is engaged, roll down the rear window and use the outside door handle. Or have someone outside the vehicle open the door.

Seatbelts

SEATBELT PRECAUTIONS

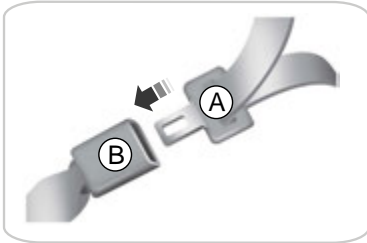
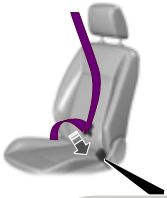


WARNING: Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.

FASTENING AND UNFASTENING THE SEATBELTS

Fastening the Seatbelts

All seatbelts in your vehicle are a three-point combination lap and shoulder seatbelt.



- A Seatbelt tongue.
- B Seatbelt buckle.

1. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Note: It may lock if you pull it sharply or if the vehicle is on a slope.

2. Insert the tongue into the buckle.

3. Pull the seatbelt tight to remove any slack.

Unfastening the Seatbelts

1. Press the red button on the buckle to release the seatbelt.
2. Hold the seatbelt tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

This is a safety feature built into the seatbelt retractors that keeps the seatbelts pre-locked.

ENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE



1. Fasten the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until you pull the entire belt out.
3. Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seatbelt is now in the automatic locking mode.

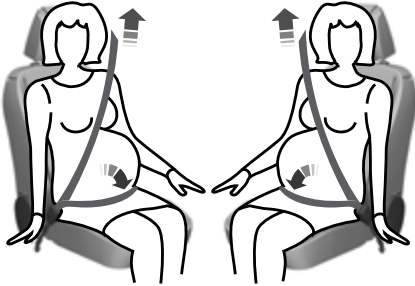
Seatbelts

DISENGAGING AUTOMATIC LOCKING MODE

Unbuckle the combination lap and shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive locking mode.

ADJUSTING THE SEATBELTS DURING PREGNANCY

WARNING: Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.



Pregnant women should always wear their seatbelt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SEATBELT REMINDER

HOW DOES THE SEATBELT REMINDER WORK

WARNING: The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

This system monitors all seating positions and provides audio and graphic feedback.

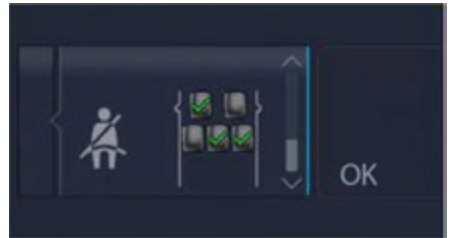
SEATBELT REMINDER INDICATORS



This lamp illuminates if you do not fasten your seatbelt when you switch the ignition on. The lamp switches off when you fasten your seatbelt or about one minute has elapsed.

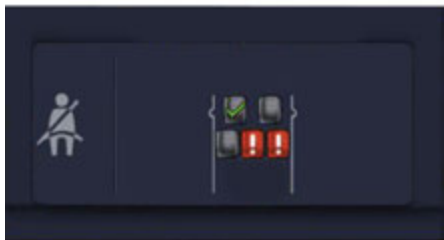
When the initial warning expires for the driver, more warnings are provided for the driver and front passenger. This lamp illuminates if you or your front passenger do not fasten the seatbelt buckle and the vehicle speed exceeds 9.7 km/h.

Note: To avoid inadvertent warnings, do not place large objects on the seat.



Seatbelts

This lamp illuminates when you switch the ignition on, identifying the number of seating positions with fastened buckles. It illuminates again when a seating position changes from unfastened to fastened.



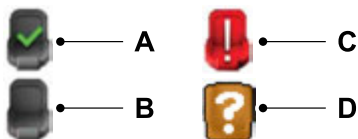
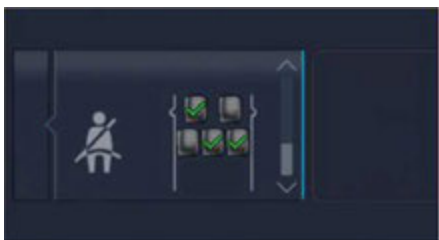
This warning displays if an occupant unfastens the rear seatbelt buckle or it becomes unfastened.

Note: *If a rear seat is unoccupied, or an occupant never fastens the seatbelt buckle to begin with, the warning will not display.*

Note: *Front seating positions appear in this warning display. Warnings for unfastened front seatbelt buckles appear in the initial warning lamp.*

Checking Seatbelt Status

To view the seatbelt status, use the information cluster display controls on the steering wheel.



- A Seatbelt fastened.
- B Seatbelt not fastened.
- C Seatbelt recently unfastened.
- D Fault.

SEATBELT REMINDER AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds and the warning lamp illuminates if you are not wearing your seatbelt when your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.

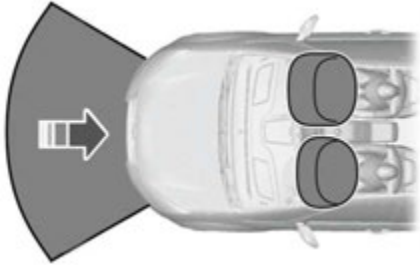
The warning tone sounds for a short period of time or until you fasten your seatbelt.

SWITCHING THE SEATBELT REMINDER ON AND OFF

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Airbags

HOW DO THE FRONT AIRBAGS WORK



The driver and front passenger airbags deploy during significant frontal and near frontal crashes.

The driver and passenger front airbag system consists of:

- Driver and passenger airbag modules.
- Front passenger sensing system.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator.

The airbags are a supplemental restraint system and are designed to work with the seatbelts to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Airbags do not inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying airbag.

Note: *You will hear a loud bang and see a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

The airbags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After airbag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium

compounds (for example, baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the airbag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

Contact with a deploying airbag may cause abrasions or swelling. Temporary hearing loss is also a possibility as a result of the noise associated with a deploying airbag.

Because airbags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of airbag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the airbag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Routine maintenance of the airbags is not required.

HOW DO THE SIDE AIRBAGS WORK



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front seat backrests, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.

Airbags

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.

The side airbags are on the outermost side of the front seat backrests. In certain sideways crashes or rollovers, the airbags inflate. The airbag was designed to inflate between the door panel and occupant to further enhance the protection provided to occupants in side impact crashes.



The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that the vehicle has side airbags.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seat backrests.
- Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator.

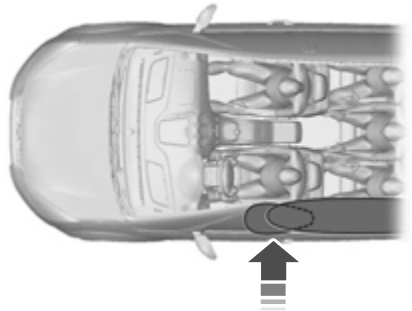
HOW DOES THE SAFETY CANOPY™ WORK

WARNING: Do not lean your head on the door. The curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side rail trim or A-pillar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the airbag.

The Safety Canopy deploys during significant side crashes or when a certain likelihood of a rollover event is detected by the rollover sensor. The Safety Canopy is mounted to the roof side rail sheet metal, behind the side rail trim, above each row of seats.

In certain sideways crashes or rollover events, the Safety Canopy activates, regardless of which seats are occupied. The Safety Canopy inflates between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes and rollover events.



Airbags

The system consists of:

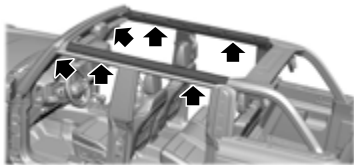
- Safety Canopy curtain airbags above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the side rail trim or the roof-pillar trim.
- Side rail trim which opens above the side doors to allow air curtain deployment



• Crash sensors and monitoring system with a readiness indicator.



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the side rail trim or A-pillar that may come into contact with a deploying curtain airbag. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



AIRBAG PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



WARNING: Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: Accessory seat covers not released by Ford Motor Company could prevent the deployment of the airbags and increase the risk of injuries in a crash.



WARNING: Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Airbags



WARNING: If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM

This system detects a properly seated occupant and determines if the front passenger airbag should be enabled.

HOW DOES THE FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM WORK

The system uses a passenger airbag status indicator which illuminates indicating that the front passenger frontal airbag is either enabled or disabled.

Note: When you first switch the ignition on, the passenger airbag status indicator off and on lamps illuminate for a short period to confirm they are functional.

The front passenger sensing system is designed to disable the front passenger frontal airbag under these conditions:

- The front passenger seat is unoccupied.
- The system determines an infant is present in a child restraint.
- A passenger takes their weight off of the seat for a period of time.
- If there is a problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

Note: Even with this technology, parents are strongly encouraged to always properly restrain children in the rear seat.

- When the front passenger sensing system disables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the off lamp.
- If you have installed the child restraint and the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp, switch your vehicle off, remove the child restraint from your vehicle and reinstall the restraint following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

The front passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the front passenger seat and seatbelt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly seated occupant and determine if the front passenger frontal airbag should be enabled.

- When the front passenger sensing system enables the front passenger frontal airbag, the passenger airbag status indicator illuminates the on lamp.



The indicator lamps are on the overhead console.

Airbags

If a person of adult size is sitting in the front passenger seat, but the passenger airbag status indicator off lamp is illuminated, it is possible that the person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens:

- Switch your vehicle off and ask the person to place the seat backrest in an upright position.
- Have the person sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended.
- Restart your vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This allows the system to detect that person and enable the passenger frontal airbag.
- If the indicator off lamp remains illuminated even after this, you should advise the person to ride in the rear seat.

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seatbelts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, leaning against the seat backrest, and centered on the seat cushion, with their feet comfortably extended on the floor.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury in a crash event. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash greatly increases.

If you think that the state of the passenger airbag status indicator lamp is incorrect, check for the following:

- Objects lodged underneath the seat.
- Objects between the seat cushion and the center console.
- Objects hanging off the seat backrest.
- Objects stowed in the seat backrest map pocket.
- Objects placed on the occupant's lap.

- Cargo interference with the seat
- Other passengers pushing or pulling on the seat.
- Rear passenger feet and knees resting or pushing on the seat.

The listed conditions could cause the weight of a properly seated occupant to be incorrectly interpreted by the front passenger sensing system. The person in the front passenger seat could appear heavier or lighter due to the conditions listed.



Make sure the front passenger sensing system is operating properly.

If the airbag readiness light is on, do the following:

- Pull your vehicle over.
- Switch your vehicle off.
- Check for any objects lodged underneath the front passenger seat or cargo interfering with the seat.
- Remove the obstruction if found.
- Restart your vehicle.
- Wait at least two minutes and verify that the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster is no longer illuminated.
- If the airbag readiness light in the instrument cluster remains illuminated, there may be a problem due to the front passenger sensing system.

Do not attempt to repair or service the system. Take your vehicle in for service immediately.

If it is necessary to modify an advanced front airbag system to accommodate a person with disabilities, contact your Customer Relationship Center.

Airbags

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a



crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

WARNING: Any alteration or modification to the front passenger seat may affect the performance of the front passenger sensing system. This could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.

FRONT PASSENGER SENSING SYSTEM INDICATORS

Occupant	Passenger Airbag Status Indicator	Passenger Airbag
Empty	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Child	OFF: Illuminated	Disabled
	ON: Not Illuminated	
Adult	OFF: Not Illuminated	Enabled
	ON: Illuminated	

Keys and Remote Controls

REMOTE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

A valid remote control must be within one of the three external detection ranges. These are approximately 1 m from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- The remote control frequencies are jammed.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

Use your remote control to access various vehicle systems.

Note: *The buttons on your remote may vary depending on the vehicle region or options.*

Unlock



Press the button to unlock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 56).

Lock



Press the button to lock all doors. See **Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control** (page 56).

Panic Alarm (if Equipped)



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. See **Sounding the Panic Alarm** (page 47).

REMOVING THE KEY BLADE



Push the release button on your passive key and pull the key blade out.

SOUNDING THE PANIC ALARM



Press the button to sound the panic alarm. Press the button again or switch the ignition on to turn it off.

Note: *The panic alarm only operates when the ignition is off.*

Keys and Remote Controls

LOCATING YOUR VEHICLE



Press the lock button twice within three seconds. The turn signal lamps flash. We recommend you use this method to locate your vehicle.

CHANGING THE REMOTE CONTROL BATTERY



WARNING: Keep batteries away from children to prevent ingestion. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death. If ingested, immediately seek medical attention.



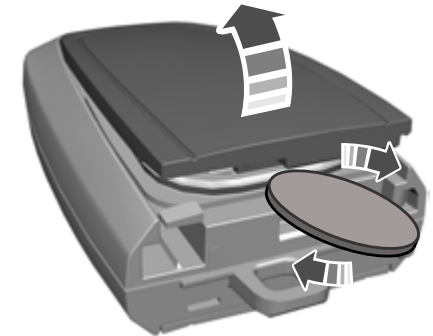
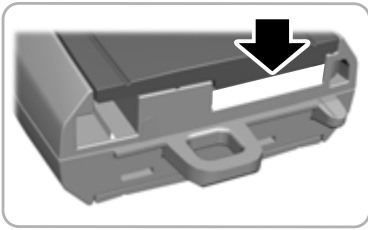
WARNING: If the battery compartment does not securely close, stop using the remote control and replace it as soon as possible. In the meantime, keep the remote control away from children. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The remote control uses one coin-type 3-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

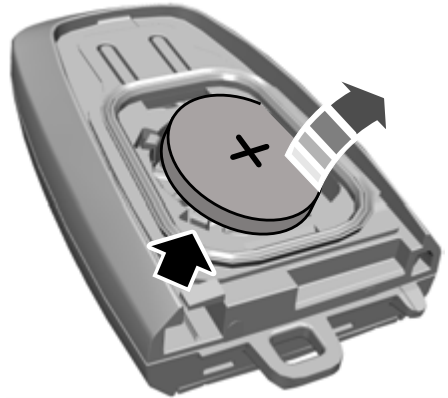


1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

Keys and Remote Controls



2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



3. Insert a screwdriver, and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery housing cover onto the transmitter and install the key blade.



Dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The remote control should operate normally.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

You can purchase replacement keys or remote controls from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle.

Keys and Remote Controls

PROGRAMMING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You must have two previously programmed remote controls inside your vehicle and the new, unprogrammed remote controls readily accessible. Contact an authorized dealer to have the spare remote control programmed if two previously programmed remote controls are not available. Make sure that your vehicle is off before beginning this procedure.

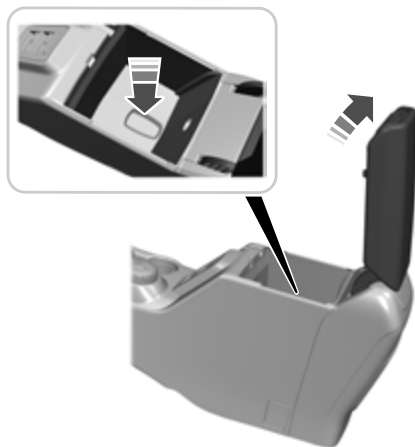
Make sure that you close all the doors before beginning and that they remain closed throughout the procedure. Perform all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence. Stop and wait for at least one minute before starting again if you perform any steps out of sequence.

Note: You can program a maximum of four remote controls to your vehicle.

Note: If your programmed remote controls get lost or stolen and you do not have an extra coded remote, you need to have your vehicle towed to an authorized dealer. Store an extra programmed remote away from your vehicle in a safe place to help prevent any inconvenience. Contact an authorized dealer to purchase additional spare or replacement remote controls.

Read and understand the entire procedure before you begin.

Programming Backup Location



1. Place the first programmed remote in the backup slot inside the center console. With your foot off the brake pedal, press and release the push button ignition switch.
2. Wait five seconds and then press and release the push button ignition switch again.
3. Remove the remote control.
4. Within 10 seconds, place a second programmed remote control in the backup slot. Press and release the push button ignition switch.
5. Wait five seconds and then press and release the push button ignition switch again. Keep the ignition on for at least 3 seconds, but no more than 10 seconds.
6. Remove the remote control.
7. Place the unprogrammed remote control in the backup slot and press and release the push button ignition switch.

Keys and Remote Controls

Programming is now complete. With your foot on the brake pedal, press the push button ignition switch to verify the remote control functions operate and your vehicle starts with the new remote control.

If programming was not successful, wait 10 seconds and repeat Steps 1 through 7. If you are still unsuccessful, take your vehicle to an authorized dealer.

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Key battery low Replace soon	Displays when the remote control battery requires replacing.

WHAT IS MYKEY

MyKey allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits.

You can program the restrictions to all keys except one. Any keys that you did not program are administrator keys or admin keys.

Note: *Every MyKey receives the same restrictions and settings. You cannot program them individually.*

MYKEY SETTINGS

NON-CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

Seatbelt Reminder or Belt-Minder™

MyKey mutes the audio system until the front seat passengers buckle the front seat belts.

Note: *If your vehicle includes an AM/FM radio or a very basic audio system, the radio may not mute.*

Early Low Fuel

The low fuel level warning lamp turns on earlier.

Driving and Parking Aids

You cannot configure settings for parking aids, blind spot information system, and cross traffic alert. These systems turn on when the vehicle turns on, and you cannot switch them off with a MyKey.

You cannot configure settings for pre-collision assist and lane keeping. These systems turn on when the vehicle turns on.

A new destination in the navigation system can only be set using voice commands when using a MyKey, and with your vehicle moving.

Note: *MyKey drivers may be able to switch the lane keeping assist off, but this feature turns back on automatically with every new key cycle.*

CONFIGURABLE MYKEY SETTINGS

You can configure the following settings after creating a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53).

Speed Limit



WARNING: Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

You can set a speed limit for your vehicle. Warning messages appear on the touchscreen and a tone sounds if your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed when using a MyKey.

Speed Minder

You can set a speed reminder for your vehicle. Warning messages appear on the touchscreen and a tone sounds if your vehicle exceeds the set speed.

Audio System Volume Limit

The audio system maximum volume reduces. A message appears on the touchscreen if you attempt to exceed the volume limit. Automatic volume control turns off.

Emergency Assistance

If you set emergency assistance to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

Do Not Disturb

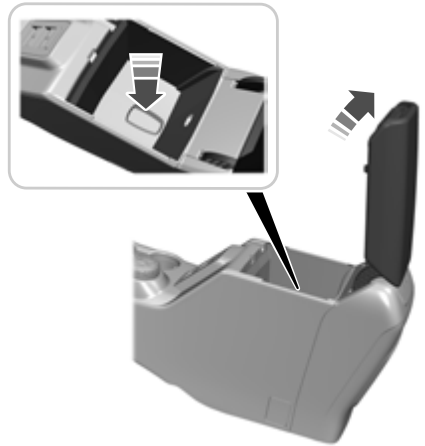
If you set do not disturb to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

Note: *If a phone is connected using Apple CarPlay or Android Auto while driving with a MyKey, the driver can receive phone calls and text messages even if the do not disturb restriction is on.*

Traction and Stability Control

If you set traction control or stability control to always on, you cannot switch it off with a MyKey.

CREATING A MYKEY



1. Raise the center console storage compartment lid.
2. Place the remote control in the location shown with the buttons facing upward.
3. Switch the ignition on using the key you want to create as MyKey.
4. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
5. Press **Vehicle settings**.
6. Press **MyKey**.
7. Press **Create MyKey**.
8. Press **Yes**.
9. Switch the ignition off.

Note: *You successfully created a MyKey. We recommend that you label this key so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.*

Note: *The programmed restrictions apply when you switch the vehicle off, open and close the driver door and restart your vehicle with the programmed key or remote control.*

PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

You can program any remote control to become a restricted MyKey, but you must leave one unmodified as an admin key.

1. Switch the vehicle on using an admin key.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle settings**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Select and configure the settings.

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

When you clear all MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

1. Switch the vehicle on using an admin key.

MYKEY – TROUBLESHOOTING

MYKEY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Place key in backup location	Displays when trying to create a MyKey and the admin key is not placed in the backup position. See Creating a MyKey (page 53).
Key is already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Key restricted at next start. Label this key	Displays to confirm that the key is restricted after you switch the ignition off.

2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle settings**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Press **Clear all MyKeys**.
6. Press **Yes**.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about the distance traveled using a MyKey, and the number of admin keys and MyKeys created for your vehicle.

1. Switch the vehicle on.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle settings**.
4. Press **MyKey**.
5. Press **MyKey Information**.

MYKEY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What is an admin key?

An admin key is a key that you have not created as a MyKey. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53).

Why am I not able to create a MyKey?

You have not placed the admin key in the backup position. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53). The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. The key used to switch the ignition on is the only admin key. There has to be at least one admin key. You did not switch the ignition off after creating the last MyKey.

Why am I not able to program a MyKey?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53).

Why am I not able to clear the MyKeys?

The admin key is not inside your vehicle. The key used to switch the ignition on is not an admin key. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53).

Why is the MyKey distance not accumulating?

The key used to start the engine is an admin key. An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. You have not created any MyKeys. See **Creating a MyKey** (page 53). You have cleared the MyKeys. See **Clearing All MyKeys** (page 54).

Why am I not able to start the engine with a MyKey?

An admin key and a MyKey are inside your vehicle. The system recognizes only the admin key when both are present.

Doors and Locks

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE REMOTE CONTROL

You can only use the remote control when your vehicle is stationary.

Unlocking the Doors



Press the button to unlock all doors. One long flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has unlocked.

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all doors. One short flash of the turn signal lamps confirms that your vehicle has locked.

OPERATING THE DOORS FROM INSIDE YOUR VEHICLE

UNLOCKING AND LOCKING THE DOORS USING THE CENTRAL LOCKING

The power door lock control is on the front doors.



Press the button to unlock all doors.



Press the button to lock all doors.

Note: The central locking only operates if the front doors are fully closed.

AUTOUNLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOUNLOCK

Autounlock is an unlocking feature that unlocks the vehicle doors when your vehicle comes to a stop.

AUTOUNLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autounlock unlocks all the doors after all of the following occur.

1. All the doors are closed and your vehicle is moving at a speed greater than 12 mph (20 km/h).
2. Your vehicle comes to a stop.
3. You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to the accessory position.

Note: If you open the driver door after 10 minutes, Autounlock does not unlock all other doors.

SWITCHING AUTOUNLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Auto Unlock** on or off.

AUTOLOCK

WHAT IS AUTOLOCK

Autolock is a locking feature that locks your vehicle doors when you start driving.

Doors and Locks

AUTOLOCK REQUIREMENTS

Autolock locks all the doors when all of the following occur:

- All doors are closed.
- The ignition is on.
- Your vehicle reaches a speed greater than 20 km/h.

MISLOCK

WHAT IS MISLOCK

Mislock is a locking feature that warns you if your vehicle has not locked.

MISLOCK LIMITATIONS

When you press the lock button once, the turn signals do not flash if:

- Any door or the tailgate is open.
- The hood is open.

If you switch mislock off, the horn does not sound if you press the lock button on the remote control when a door is open.

SWITCHING MISLOCK ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Locks**.
4. Switch **Mislock Chirp** on or off.

DOORS AND LOCKS – TROUBLESHOOTING

DOORS AND LOCKS – WARNING LAMPS

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door or the hood is open.

DOORS AND LOCKS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver door open	Displays if a door is open. Fully close the door.
Passenger door open	
Rear left door open	
Rear right door open	
Bonnet open	Displays if a hood is open. Fully close the hood.

Doors and Locks

DOORS AND LOCKS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Can accessories such as steps or handles be used with the latch assembly?

Do not use the door latch assembly to attach any accessory, such as handles or steps, as this can cause damage to your vehicle.

Keyless Entry (If Equipped)

WHAT IS KEYLESS ENTRY

The system allows you to lock and unlock your vehicle without taking the passive key out of your pocket or purse.

KEYLESS ENTRY LIMITATIONS

Make sure your remote control is within 1 m from the front door handles and the tailgate.

The system could not function if:

- The remote control remains stationary for about a minute.
- The vehicle battery has no charge.
- The remote control battery has no charge.
- There is interference causing issues with the remote control frequencies.
- The remote control is too close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.

KEYLESS ENTRY SETTINGS

Switching Keyless Entry On and Off

1. Switch the ignition on using an original key that has not been created as a MyKey.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Vehicle settings**.
4. Press **Locks**.

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can enable two-stage unlocking function allowing you to unlock only the driver door when you touch the unlock sensor.

Press and hold both the lock and unlock buttons on the remote control for four seconds to disable or enable two-stage unlocking.

If you program the unlocking function so that only the driver door unlocks, you can unlock all of the other doors from inside your vehicle using the power door lock control. You can unlock individual doors by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

USING KEYLESS ENTRY

Unlocking the Doors



With your passive key within 1 m of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful not to touch the lock sensor at the same time or pull on the door handle too quickly. The intelligent access system requires a brief delay to authenticate your passive key.

Locking the Doors



Keyless Entry (If Equipped)

With your passive key within 1 m of your vehicle, touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful not to touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.

KEYLESS ENTRY – TROUBLESHOOTING

KEYLESS ENTRY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the keyless entry system not function?

If the system does not function it may be limited. See **Keyless Entry Limitations** (page 59). If the system still does not function use the remote control or the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.

Why can I not lock my vehicle?

If you electronically lock your vehicle with a rear door or the tailgate open, the system searches for a passive key inside your vehicle after you close the last door. If the system detects a key, all doors unlock indicating that a key is inside. Your vehicle locks if another passive key is within the detection range after you close the last door.

Tailgate

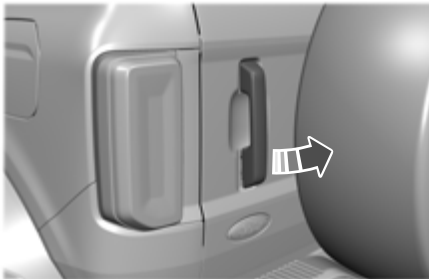
TAILGATE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

OPENING THE TAILGATE

OPENING THE TAILGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



1. Unlock the vehicle with the remote control or power door unlock control.

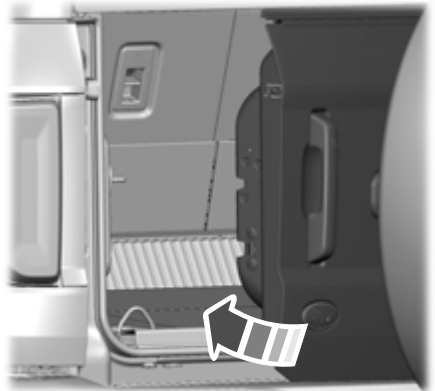
Note: If a passive key is within 1 m of the tailgate, the tailgate unlocks when you touch the inside of the tailgate handle.

2. Pull the handle to release the tailgate.

Note: An open tailgate could obstruct the right-hand side tail lamp. Make sure you take the necessary precautions while parked on the side of the road with the tailgate open. Do not drive with the tailgate open.

CLOSING THE TAILGATE

CLOSING THE TAILGATE FROM OUTSIDE YOUR VEHICLE



Push the tailgate until fully closed.

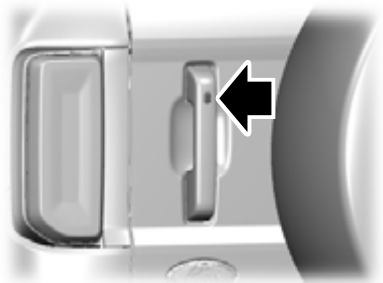
LOCKING AND UNLOCKING THE TAILGATE

You can lock or unlock your vehicle with the remote control or power door lock control.

Locking

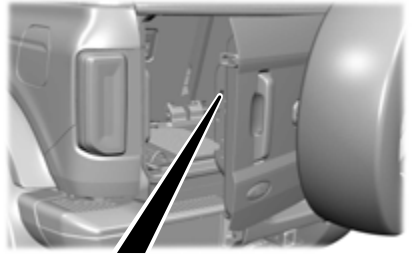
If a passive key is within 1 m of the tailgate, touch the lock button on the tailgate handle to lock.

Tailgate



Unlocking

If a passive key is within 1 m of the tailgate, touch the back of the tailgate handle to unlock.

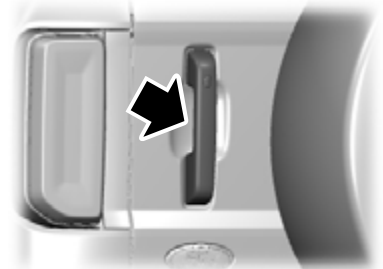


Emergency Unlocking

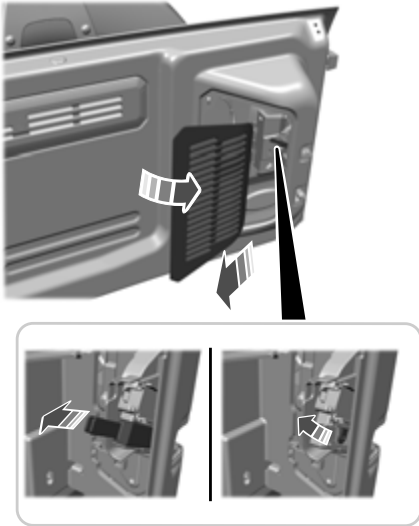
If there is a power door lock fault you can use the release lever to unlock the tailgate door.

Emergency Locking

If there is a power door lock fault you can use the key blade to lock the tailgate door.



Tailgate



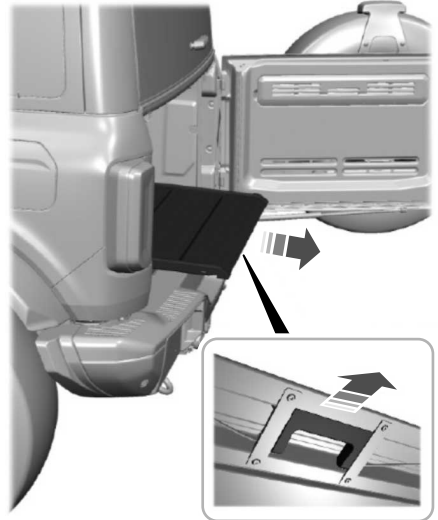
1. Remove the tailgate trim panel.
2. Remove the inside release lever cover.
3. Using a small tool, pull the release lever to open the tailgate.
4. Reinstall the inside release lever cover and trim panel after unlocking the tailgate.

SLIDE OUT TAILGATE (IF EQUIPPED)



WARNING: Do not use or sit on the slide out tailgate when the vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

The slide out tailgate is a durable and functional surface that slides out from the rear load floor.



1. Fully open the tailgate.
2. Locate the release handle.
3. Pull the release handle to unlock and slide out the tailgate.
4. To close the slide out tailgate, squeeze the handle and push forward until locked in place.

Note: The slide out tailgate can hold a maximum of 272 kg.

Note: Do not drive with the slide out tailgate in the extended position.

TAILGATE – TROUBLESHOOTING

TAILGATE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the tailgate is not completely closed.

Tailgate

TAILGATE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Tailgate

Message	Details
Tailgate open	The tailgate is not completely closed.

Security

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

The passive anti-theft system prevents someone from starting the vehicle with an incorrectly coded key.

Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all the doors when leaving your vehicle.

HOW DOES THE PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM WORK

The passive anti-theft system arms when you switch the ignition off.

It disarms when the ignition is switched on with a correctly coded key.

Note: The system is not compatible with non-Ford aftermarket remote start systems.

Note: Do not leave a duplicate coded key in your vehicle. Always take the keys and lock all doors when leaving your vehicle.

SECURITY – TROUBLESHOOTING

SECURITY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
No key detected	The system has not detected a correctly coded key.
Starting system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Vehicle alarm Start vehicle to stop alarm	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm announcement	

SECURITY – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

What should I do if there is any potential alarm problem with my vehicle?

Take all remote controls to an authorized dealer if there is any potential alarm problem with your vehicle.


What should I do if the vehicle is unable to start with a correctly coded key?

Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

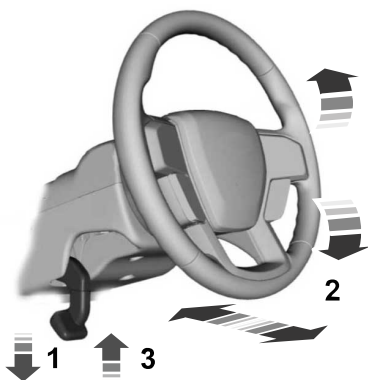
Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

 **WARNING:** Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 99).



1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position you prefer.
3. Lock the steering column.

HORN



Press on the center of the steering wheel near the horn icon to activate the horn.

SWITCHING THE HEATED STEERING WHEEL ON AND OFF

(IF EQUIPPED)



To activate the heated steering wheel, press the button on the climate control unit.

On some vehicles, an indicator on the button illuminates when the heated steering wheel is on.

Note: A sensor regulates the temperature of the steering wheel.

Wipers and Washers

WIPERS

WIPER PRECAUTIONS

The vehicle is equipped with protection features to prevent damage to the wiper motor in case of overheating, usage on dry windshields or obstructions to the wiper blade due to snow or ice accumulation on the windshield.

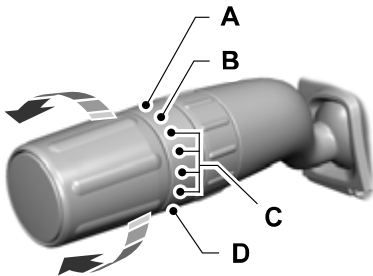
In such conditions, the wiper motor may restrict its speed, reduce area of cleaning or completely stop operation. System returns back to normal operation mode once conditions are resolved.

Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This could scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

SWITCHING WINDSHIELD WIPERS ON AND OFF



A High-speed wipe.

B Low-speed wipe.

C Auto Wipe/Intermittent wipe.

D Off.



Use the rotary control.

SWITCHING THE REAR WINDOW WIPER ON AND OFF



Rotate the control away from you for a long wipe interval.

Rotate the control toward you for a short wipe interval.

REVERSE WIPE

WHAT IS REVERSE WIPE

Reverse wipe turns on the rear window wiper when you shift into reverse (R) and the windshield wipers are on.

REVERSE WIPE SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Rear Wiper On (when in Reverse)** on or off.

Wipers and Washers

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



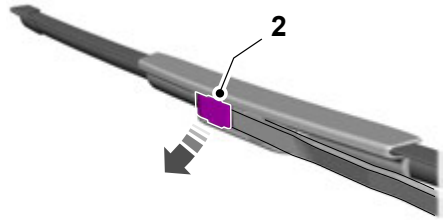
Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

REPLACING THE FRONT WIPER BLADES

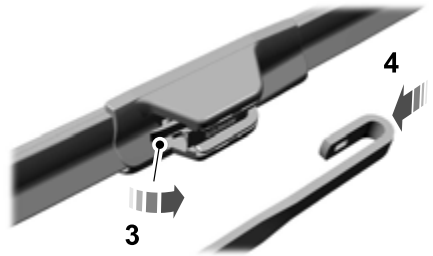


1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.



2. Lift the wiper blade primary locking clip.



3. Press the wiper blade secondary locking clip.

4. Remove the wiper blade.

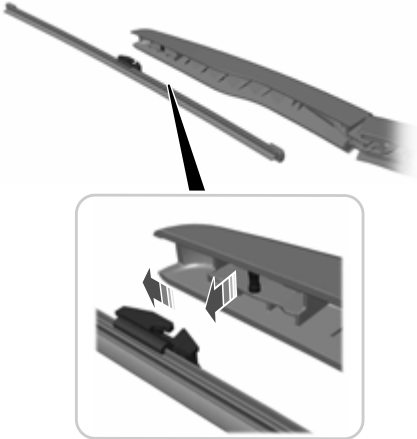
Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

5. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

Wipers and Washers

REPLACING THE REAR WIPER BLADES



1. Lift the wiper arm.

Note: Do not hold the wiper blade to lift the wiper arm.

2. Remove the wiper blade.

Note: Make sure that the wiper arm does not spring back against the glass when the wiper blade is not attached.

3. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

WASHERS

WASHER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 5°C, use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This could cause the washer pump to overheat.

Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

USING THE WINDSHIELD WASHER



Press and hold the button at the end of the lever to operate the windshield washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 71).

Wipers and Washers

SWITCHING THE COURTESY WIPE ON AND OFF

Courtesy Wipe

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Wipers**.
4. Switch **Courtesy Wipe** on or off.

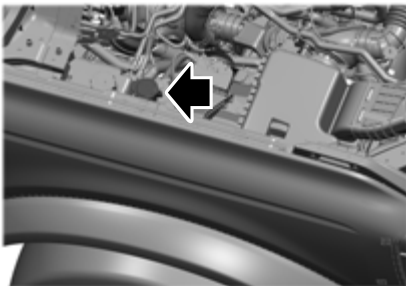
USING THE REAR WINDOW WASHER



Rotate the control to the top or bottom position and hold it to operate the rear window washer.

Note: A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid when switched on. See **Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off** (page 71).

ADDING WASHER FLUID



WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Washer Fluid Specification** (page 321).

WIPERS AND WASHERS – TROUBLESHOOTING

WIPERS AND WASHERS – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when the windshield washer fluid is low.

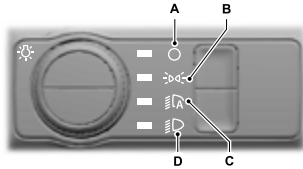
WIPERS AND WASHERS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why are there streaks and smears on the windshield?

The wiper blades could be dirty, worn or damaged. Check the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 69). If the wiper blades are dirty, clean them with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth. If the wiper blades are worn or damaged, install new ones. See **Replacing the Front Wiper Blades** (page 69).

Exterior Lighting

EXTERIOR LIGHTING CONTROL



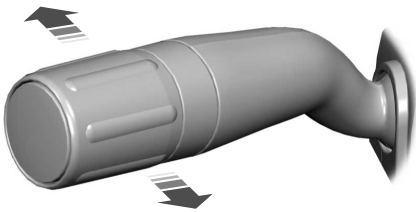
- A Lamps off.
- B Parking lamps on.
- C Autolamps on.
- D Headlamps on.


Rotate the control to make a selection.

Note: *The lighting control defaults to autolamps every time you switch your vehicle on.*

HEADLAMPS

USING THE HIGH BEAM HEADLAMPS



 Push the lever away from you to switch the high beam on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

Slightly pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the headlamps.

HEADLAMP INDICATORS

Lamps On



Illuminates when you switch the low beam headlamps or the parking lamps on.

Headlamp High Beam



Illuminates when you switch the high beam headlamps on.

HEADLAMPS – TROUBLESHOOTING

HEADLAMPS – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is there condensation in the headlamps?

- Headlamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure. Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

How much condensation is acceptable?

- The presence of a fine mist, for example no streaks, drip marks or large droplets. A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Exterior Lighting

How long may it take for the acceptable condensation to be cleared?

- Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

How much condensation is unacceptable?

- A water puddle inside the lamp. Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

What should I do if unacceptable condensation is present?

- Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Why do my headlamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

- The battery saver turns the headlamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

AUTOLAMPS

WHAT ARE AUTOLAMPS



WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

Autolamps turn the headlamps on in low light situations or when the windshield wipers operate.

AUTOLAMP SETTINGS

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.

2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Press **Headlamp Delay**.
5. Press a setting.

EXTERIOR LAMPS

USING THE TURN SIGNAL LAMPS

[Intelligent Three Blink Turn Signal](#)



Push the lever up or down to switch the turn signal lamps on.

Set the lever to the middle position to switch the turn signal lamps off.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the turn signal lamps flash three times.

Turn Signal Lamp Indicator



It flashes when you switch the turn signal lamps on.

Note: An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed turn signal lamp.

Exterior Lighting

SWITCHING THE DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS ON AND OFF



WARNING: The daytime running lamps system does not activate the rear lamps and may not provide adequate lighting during low visibility driving conditions. Make sure you switch the headlamps on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

Daytime running lamps are always on unless you switch on the headlamps or your vehicle is in park (P).

USING THE FRONT FOG LAMPS

To switch the lamps on or off:

1. Set the lighting control to the parking lamps, headlamps or autolamps position.

Note: When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, you cannot switch the fog lamps on unless the low beam headlamps are on.

2.



Press the button on the lighting control to switch the front fog lamps on or off.

Note: Only switch the front fog lamps on during reduced visibility.

Note: The brightness of the daytime running lamps may decrease when the front fog lamps are switched on.

Front Fog Lamps Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

USING THE REAR FOG LAMPS

The rear fog lamp button is on the lighting control.



Press the button to switch the rear fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the rear fog lamps on if any of the following occur:

- You set the lighting control to the headlamps position.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position and the headlamps are on.

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

EXTERIOR LAMPS ON AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when you open the driver door and the exterior lamps are on.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL

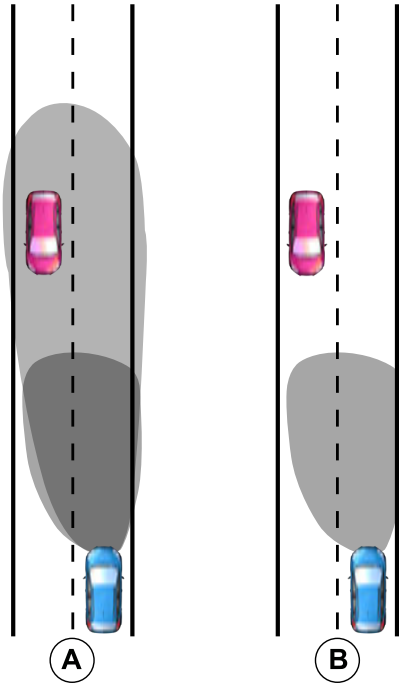
HOW DOES AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL WORK

[Auto High Beams](#)

Automatic high beam control turns the high beams on if it is dark enough and no other traffic is present. If it detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps, or street lighting ahead, the system turns the high beams off.

A camera sensor, centrally mounted behind the windshield of your vehicle, continuously monitors conditions to turn the high beams on and off.

Exterior Lighting



- A Without automatic high beam control.
- B With automatic high beam control.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the high beams on or off.

WARNING: The system may not switch the high beams off if the lights of oncoming vehicles are hidden by obstacles, for example guard rails.

WARNING: Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

WARNING: You may need to override the system when approaching other road users.

WARNING: You may need to override the system during inclement weather.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL REQUIREMENTS

The system turns the high beams on if all of the following occur:

- You switch the system on.
- You set the lighting control to the autolamps position.
- The ambient light level is low enough that you require high beams.
- There is no traffic in front of your vehicle.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 52 km/h.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL LIMITATIONS

The system turns the high beams off if any of the following occur:

- You switch the system off.
- You set the lighting control to any position except autolamps.
- The ambient light level is high enough that you do not require high beams.

Exterior Lighting

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps or a leading vehicle's tail lamps.
- The system detects severe rain, snow or fog.
- The system detects street lighting.
- The camera has reduced visibility.
- The vehicle speed falls below approximately 44 km/h.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Lighting**.
4. Switch **Auto Highbeam** on or off.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL INDICATORS



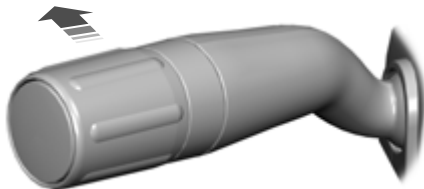
Illuminates to confirm when the system is ready to assist.

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The camera has reduced visibility. Clean the windshield. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The camera has malfunctioned. Wait a short period of time for the camera to cool down. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The camera has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC HIGH BEAM CONTROL



Push the lever away from you to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever away from you again to switch the high beams off.

Push the lever away from you for a third time to switch automatic high beam control back on.

Exterior Lighting

ADAPTIVE FRONT LIGHTING

SWITCHING THE HEADLAMPS FOR DRIVING ON THE LEFT OR RIGHT-HAND SIDE OF THE ROAD

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Vehicle**.
4. Press **Lighting**.
5. Press **Adaptive headlamp setup**.
6. Press a setting.

Interior Lighting

SWITCHING ALL OF THE INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF

The lamps turn on under the following conditions:

- You open any door.
- You press a button on the remote control.
- You press the all lamps on button on the overhead console.



Press to switch all interior lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE FRONT INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



The front interior lamp switches are on the overhead console.

Note: The position of each button on the overhead console depends on your vehicle.

Individual Map Lamps



Press to switch the left-hand individual dome lamp on and off.



Press to switch the right-hand individual dome lamp on and off.

SWITCHING THE REAR INTERIOR LAMPS ON AND OFF



The rear interior lamps may be above the rear seat or above the rear windows.



Press to switch the lamps on or off.

Note: If you switch the rear lamps on through the overhead console, you cannot switch them off with the rear lamp switch.

INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

WHAT IS THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION

The interior lamp function switches the courtesy and door lamps on or off.

SWITCHING THE INTERIOR LAMP FUNCTION ON AND OFF



Press to switch the interior lamp function on and off.

Note: The indicator lamp illuminates amber when the door function is off.

Interior Lighting

ADJUSTING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL LIGHTING BRIGHTNESS

The instrument lighting dimmer buttons are on the lighting control.



Repeatedly press one of the buttons to adjust the brightness.



AMBIENT LIGHTING

SWITCHING AMBIENT LIGHTING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Ambient Light**.
4. Switch **Ambient Light** on or off.

ADJUSTING AMBIENT LIGHTING

Drag the slider left or right.

INTERIOR LIGHTING – TROUBLESHOOTING

INTERIOR LIGHTING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why do my courtesy lamps or interior lamps turn off when I have them switched on when I switch my vehicle off?

The battery saver turns the courtesy lamps and interior lamps off after a short period of time after you switch your vehicle off.

Windows

OPENING AND CLOSING THE WINDOWS



WARNING: Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

Note: *The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.*

To reduce wind noise or pulsing noise when one window is open, slightly open the opposite window.

One-Touch Open (If Equipped)

Fully press the window control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

One-Touch Close (If Equipped)

Fully lift the window control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window.

Resetting One-Touch Close

Carry out all steps within 30 seconds of starting the sequence.

1. Fully open the window.
2. Lift and hold the window control until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control held for a two seconds

3. Press and hold the window control until the window is fully open. Keep the window control pressed for two seconds.
4. Lift and hold the window control until the window is fully closed. Keep the window control held for a two seconds

Note: *Repeat the procedure if the window does not close when you use one-touch.*

Tailgate Window

To open the window, do the following:

1. Open the tailgate. See **Opening the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 61).
2. Lift the window.

To close the window, do the following:

1. Push the window down.
2. Close the tailgate. See **Closing the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle** (page 61).

GLOBAL OPENING

WHAT IS GLOBAL OPENING

You can use the remote control to open the windows with the ignition off.

USING GLOBAL OPENING

1. Press and release the unlock button on the remote control.
2. Press and hold the unlock button on the remote control.
3. Release the button when the windows start to open.

Press the lock or the unlock button on the remote control to stop global opening.

Note: *You can use global opening for a short period of time when you unlock your vehicle using the remote control.*

Windows

SWITCHING GLOBAL OPENING ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Press **Windows**.
4. Switch **Global Open** on or off.

WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

WHAT IS WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK

The window stops and reverses if it detects an obstruction when closing.

OVERRIDING WINDOW BOUNCE-BACK



WARNING: If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift and hold the window control switch within two seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

LOCKING THE REAR WINDOW CONTROLS



Press the window control switch to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Interior Mirror

INTERIOR MIRROR PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the mirror housing or glass with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

WHAT IS THE AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR

The mirror dims to reduce the effect of bright light from behind. It returns to normal when the bright light from behind is no longer present or if you shift into reverse (R), to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

AUTO-DIMMING INTERIOR MIRROR LIMITATIONS

Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror.

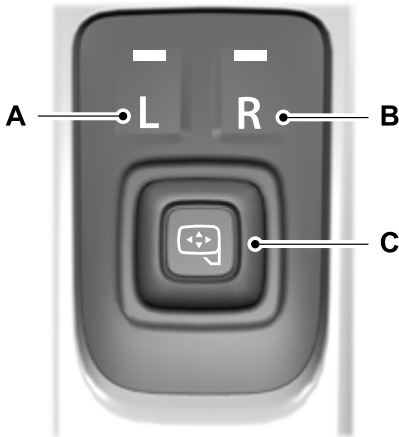
Note: A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint could prevent light from reaching the sensor.

Exterior Mirrors

ADJUSTING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS



WARNING: Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



- A Left-hand mirror.
- B Right-hand mirror.
- C Adjustment control.

To adjust your mirrors, switch your vehicle on, with the ignition in accessory mode or the engine running.

1. Select the mirror you want to adjust. The control light turns on.
2. Use the adjustment control to adjust the position of the mirror.
3. Press the mirror control again. The control light turns off.

FOLDING THE EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Push the mirror toward the door window glass. Make sure that you fully engage the mirror in its support when returning it to its original position.

Heated Exterior Mirrors

See **Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off** (page 94).

Memory Mirrors

You can save and recall the mirror positions through the memory function.

Directional Indicator Mirrors

When your vehicle is running, the forward-facing portion of the appropriate mirror housing blinks when you switch on the turn signal.

Puddle Lamps

The puddle lamps turn on when you approach your vehicle with a remote control or phone.

360 Degree Camera

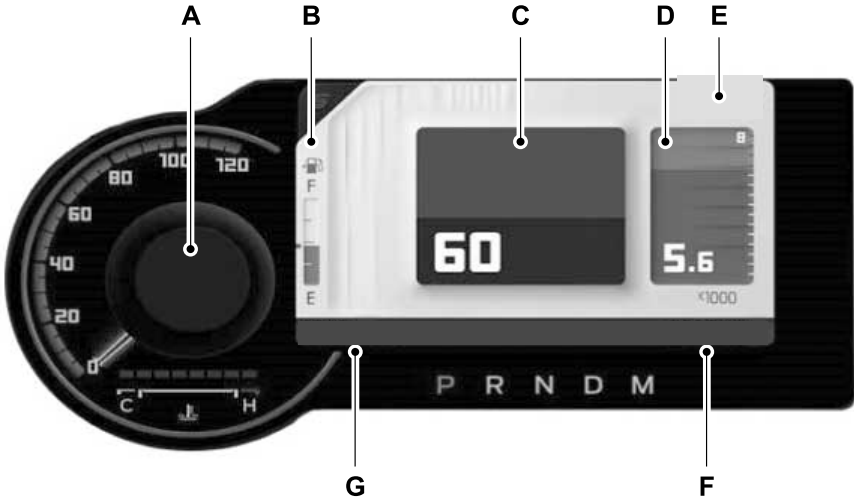
See **Locating the 360 Degree Cameras** (page 181).

Blind Spot Information System

See **What Is Blind Spot Information System** (page 205).

Instrument Cluster

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER OVERVIEW - VEHICLES WITH: 8 INCH SCREEN



- A Speedometer.
- B Fuel gauge.
- C Digital speedometer.
- D Tachometer.
- E Compass and ambient temperature.
- F Odometer.
- G Distance to empty.

TACHOMETER

Indicates the engine speed.

SPEEDOMETER

Indicates the vehicle speed.

FUEL GAUGE

WHAT IS THE FUEL GAUGE

Indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

Instrument Cluster

FUEL GAUGE LIMITATIONS

The fuel gauge may not provide an accurate reading when your vehicle is on an incline.

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER DOOR

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

WHAT IS THE LOW FUEL REMINDER

A low fuel level reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty reaches 120 km to empty for MyKey, and at 80 km, 40 km, 20 km and 0 km for all vehicle keys.

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

WHAT IS DISTANCE TO EMPTY

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle can travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern can cause the value to not only decrease but also increase or stay constant for periods of time.

ENGINE COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the engine coolant temperature.

TRANSMISSION FLUID TEMPERATURE GAUGE

Indicates the transmission fluid temperature.

Special operating conditions can cause higher than normal operating temperatures.

Note: *This is a configurable gauge.*

WHAT IS THE INFORMATION BAR

Displays information for navigation, outside air temperature, odometer and distance to empty.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Warning lamps alert you to a vehicle condition that could become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER WARNING LAMPS

Anti-Lock Brake System



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Battery



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Instrument Cluster

Brake System Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is released. If the parking brake is released, this indicates low brake fluid level or the brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.



Note: Indicators may vary depending on region.

Door Ajar



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door is open.

Electric Park Brake



It illuminates or flashes when the electric parking brake requires service.

Note: Indicators may vary depending on region.

Engine Coolant Temperature



If it illuminates, safely stop your vehicle and switch your vehicle off.

Fasten Seatbelt



It illuminates and a tone sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

Hood Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the hood is not completely closed.

Low Beam Warning



Illuminates when the low beam headlamp bulb requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Low Fuel Level



It illuminates when the fuel level is low.

Low Tire Pressure



It illuminates when your tire pressure is low. If illuminated, check your tire pressure as soon as possible. If it begins to flash at anytime, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Low Washer Fluid Level



It illuminates when the washer fluid is low.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the engine is off, this is normal operation. If it illuminates when the engine is on this indicates that the emission control system requires service. If it flashes, have your vehicle checked immediately.

Oil Pressure



It illuminates when the engine oil pressure is low.

Powertrain Malfunction



Illuminates when the powertrain requires service. Have the system checked as soon as possible.

Instrument Cluster

Tailgate Ajar



It illuminates when the ignition is on and the tailgate is not completely closed.

WHAT ARE THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Indicators notify you of various features that are active on your vehicle.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER INDICATORS

Adaptive Cruise Control



See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 183).

Automatic Headlamp High Beam



See **Automatic High Beam Control** (page 74).

Auto-Start-Stop



See **Auto-Start-Stop** (page 122).

Blind Spot Monitor



See **Blind Spot Information System** (page 205).

Cruise Control



See **Adaptive Cruise Control** (page 183).

Differential Lock



See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 143).



Drive Modes



See **G.O.A.T. Mode Control** (page 191).



Instrument Cluster

Four-Wheel Drive



See **Four-Wheel Drive** (page 135).



Note: Some indicators will appear different depending on vehicle options.

Front Airbag



See **Airbags** (page 41).

Front Fog Lamp



See **Using the Front Fog Lamps** (page 74).

Headlamp High Beam



See **Using the High Beam Headlamps** (page 72).

Hill Descent



Lane Keeping System



See **Lane Keeping System** (page 198).

One Pedal Drive



See **Trail One Pedal Drive** (page 161).

Parking Lamps



See **Exterior Lighting** (page 72).

Pre-Collision Assist



See **Pre-Collision Assist** (page 211).



Stability Control and Traction Control



See **Stability Control** (page 157). See **Traction Control** (page 155).



Stabilizer Bar Disconnect



See **Stabilizer Bar Disconnect** (page 167).

Trail Control



See **Trail Control** (page 160).

Trail Turn Assist



See **Trail Turn Assist** (page 165).



Tow Haul



See **Towing a Trailer** (page 229).

Turn Signal Lamps



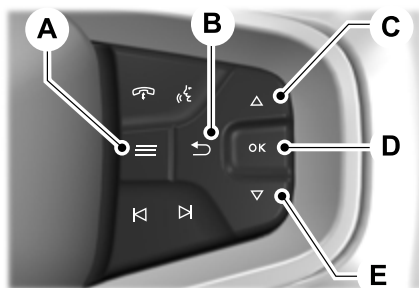
See **Exterior Lamps** (page 73).

Instrument Cluster Display

USING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY CONTROLS

WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

The controls are on the steering wheel.



- A Menu button.
- B Return button.
- C Up button.
- D OK toggle button.
- E Down toggle button

Return Button

Press to go back or to exit a menu.

OK Button

Press to make a selection. Press the toggle button up or down to scroll through menu items.

Menu Button

Press to display the submenus.

Toggle Buttons

Used to navigate the menus.

Status Indicator



Menu items with a check box indicates a feature's status. A check in the box indicates the feature is on, and unchecked indicates the feature is off.

INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY MAIN MENU

Depending on your vehicle options, some menu items may appear different or not at all.

Note: For your safety, some features are speed-dependent and could be unavailable when your vehicle is above a certain speed.

Menu Item
MyView
Tripcomp./fuel
Off-road
Navigation
Phone
Audio
Settings

Instrument Cluster Display

TRIP COMPUTER

ACCESSING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Select **Trip computer**.
2. Select **Fuel economy**, **Trip computer 1** or **Trip computer 2**.

RESETTING THE TRIP COMPUTER

1. Select **Trip computer**.
2. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

RESETTING THE INDIVIDUAL TRIP VALUES

1. Select **Trip computer**.
2. Select **Trip computer 1** or **Trip computer 2**.
3. Press and hold the **OK** button for a few seconds.

CUSTOMIZING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

Adding Screens Using MyView

1. Using the information display controls on the steering wheel, select **MyView**.
2. Select **Configure MyView**.
3. Select a screen.
4. Press the **OK** button.

Note: The number of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear you must deselect screens from the MyView menu.

Adding Screens Using Select Screens

1. Select **Select screens**.

2. Use the controls on the steering wheel to highlight a screen to add.
3. Press the **OK** button.

Note: The number of screens you can add is limited. If the selected screen does not appear you must deselect screens from the Select Screens menu.

Configuring Gauges

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Configure gauges**.
3. Select to swap or change left-hand side and right-hand side gauges.

PERSONALIZED SETTINGS

CHANGING THE INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY LANGUAGE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Language**.
4. Select a language.

Note: Available languages vary by region, and the instrument cluster display does not support all languages supported in the touchscreen. If you select a supported language then select an unsupported language, the instrument cluster display remains in the last supported language selected.

CHANGING THE MEASUREMENT UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Measurement Unit**.
4. Select a measurement unit.

Instrument Cluster Display

CHANGING THE TEMPERATURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Temperature unit**.
4. Select **Fahrenheit (°F)** or **Celsius (°C)**.

CHANGING THE TIRE PRESSURE UNIT

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Tyre Pressure Unit**.
4. Select a pressure unit.

Climate Control

IDENTIFYING THE CLIMATE CONTROL UNIT



Depending on your vehicle options, the controls could look different than what you see here.

SWITCHING CLIMATE CONTROL ON AND OFF



Press the button.

SWITCHING RECIRCULATED AIR ON AND OFF



Press the button to recirculate air currently in the passenger compartment.

Note: Recirculated air may turn off automatically, or prevent you from switching on in all air flow modes except MAX A/C to reduce the risk of fogging. Recirculation may also turn on and off automatically in various air distribution control combinations to improve heating or cooling efficiency.

SWITCHING AIR CONDITIONING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Note: Under certain conditions, the air conditioning compressor could continue to operate after you switch air conditioning off.

Note: To keep the system and its components fully functional, switch air conditioning on and let your vehicle idle at least once per month for a minimum of two minutes.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM DEFROST ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the windshield air vents, the temperature is set to the highest setting, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice.

Note: To prevent window fogging, you cannot select recirculated air when maximum defrost is on.

Note: The heated rear window and heated mirrors also turn on when you select maximum defrost.

Note: When maximum defrost is on, the air conditioning compressor may continue to operate even though you switch off the A/C.

SWITCHING MAXIMUM COOLING ON AND OFF



Press the button.

Air flows through the instrument panel air vents, the temperature is set to the lowest setting, and the blower motor adjusts to the highest speed.

Note: When you switch maximum cooling off, air conditioning remains on.

Climate Control

SWITCHING THE HEATED REAR WINDOW ON AND OFF



Press the button to clear the rear window of thin ice and fog. The heated rear window turns off after a short period of time.

Note: This button also activates the heated mirrors.

Note: Do not use harsh chemicals, razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window as this could cause damage to the heated rear window grid lines not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

SETTING THE BLOWER MOTOR SPEED



Press up or down on the control to select the blower motor speed.

Note: Lights on the control illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Note: When you switch the blower motor off, air conditioning turns off and the windows could fog up.

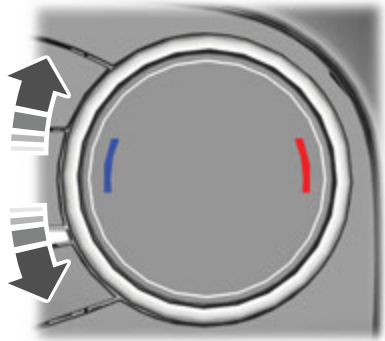
SWITCHING THE HEATED MIRRORS ON AND OFF

Heated Mirrors



Press the button.

SETTING THE TEMPERATURE



Turn the control on the left-hand side of the climate control to set the left-hand temperature.

Note: This control also sets the right-hand side temperature when you switch off dual zone mode.

Turn the control on the right-hand side of the climate control to set the right-hand temperature.

DIRECTING THE FLOW OF AIR

Directing Air to the Windshield Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Instrument Panel Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.

Climate Control



Press the button on the touchscreen.

Directing Air to the Footwell Air Vents



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button on the touchscreen.

AUTO MODE

SWITCHING AUTO MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to switch auto mode on. Repeatedly press the button to adjust auto mode.

Note: When you switch auto mode on, lights on the blower motor control do not illuminate to indicate the blower motor speed.

Adjust the blower motor control or air distribution control to switch auto mode off.

AUTO MODE INDICATORS

The indicators are on the Auto Mode button.

Auto Mode Indicator Status	Description
One indicator illuminated.	The blower motor speed is reduced. Use this setting to minimize the amount of noise from the blower motor. This setting increases the time taken to cool the interior.
Two indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is moderate.
Three indicators illuminated.	The blower motor speed is increased. Use this setting to reduce the time taken to cool the interior. This setting increases the amount of noise from the blower motor.

Climate Control

SWITCHING DUAL MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button to activate the selection screen.



Press the button.

Note: When dual mode is off, setting the temperature using the driver side controls, sets the temperature for both sides.

Note: Setting the temperature using the passenger side controls, sets the passenger temperature and switches dual mode on.

CLIMATE CONTROL HINTS

General Hints

- Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.
- You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.
- To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the time to reach a comfortable temperature in hot weather, drive with the windows open until you feel cold air through the air vents.

Automatic Climate Control

- Adjusting the settings when your vehicle interior is extremely hot or cold is not necessary. Automatic mode is best recommended to maintain set temperature.
- The system adjusts to heat or cool the interior to the temperature you select as quickly as possible.
- For the system to function efficiently, the instrument panel and side air vents should be fully open.
- If you press **AUTO** during cold outside temperatures, the system directs air flow to the windshield and side window air vents. In addition, the blower motor may run at a slower speed until the engine warms up.
- If you press **AUTO** during hot temperatures and the inside of the vehicle is hot, the system uses recirculated air to maximize interior cooling. Blower motor speed may also reduce until the air cools.

Quickly Heating the Interior

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer.

Recommended Settings for Heating

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Quickly Cooling the Interior

1. Press **MAX A/C**.
2. Drive with the windows open for a short period of time.

Climate Control

Recommended Settings for Cooling

1. Press **AUTO**.
2. Adjust the temperature function to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Defogging the Side Windows in Cold Weather

1. Press and release defrost or maximum defrost.
2. Adjust the temperature control to the setting you prefer. Use 22°C as a starting point, then adjust the setting as necessary.

Interior Air Quality

WHAT IS THE CABIN AIR FILTER

The cabin air filter improves the quality of air in your vehicle by trapping dust, pollen and other particles.

REPLACING THE CABIN AIR FILTER

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

Note: *Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.*

Note: *Using an aftermarket cabin air filter could reduce cabin air filtration and climate control performance.*

Front Seats

FRONT SEAT PRECAUTIONS

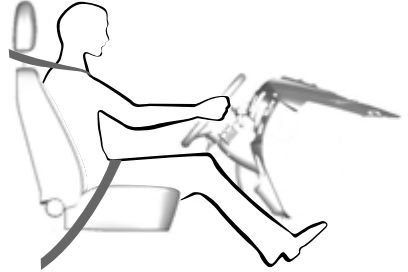
⚠ WARNING: Sitting improperly, out of position or with the seatback reclined too far can take weight off the seat cushion and affect the decision of the passenger sensing system, resulting in serious injury or death in the event of a crash. Always sit upright against your seat back, with your feet on the floor.

⚠ WARNING: Do not recline the seat backrest too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in personal injury in the event of a crash.

⚠ WARNING: Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

⚠ WARNING: Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION



When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, seatbelt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seat backrest so that your torso is more than 30 degrees from the upright position.
- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.

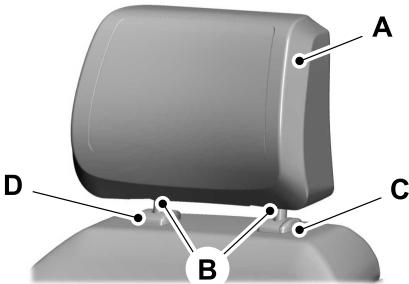
Front Seats

- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the seatbelt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

POWER SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS



The head restraints consist of:

- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.
- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button (If equipped).

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

4-Way Head Restraints



WARNING: Fully adjust the head restraint before you sit in or operate your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraint when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: The head restraint is a safety device. Whenever possible it should be installed and properly adjusted when the seat is occupied. Failure to adjust the head restraint properly could reduce its effectiveness during certain impacts.



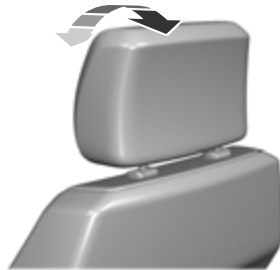
WARNING: Adjust the head restraints for all passengers before you drive your vehicle. This will help minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash. Do not adjust the head restraints when your vehicle is moving.

To raise the head restraint, pull the head restraint up.

To lower the head restraint:

1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Tilting the Head Restraint (If Equipped)



Front Seats

1. Adjust the seat backrest to an upright driving or riding position.
2. Pivot the head restraint forward toward your head to the preferred position.

After the head restraint reaches the forward-most tilt position, pivot it forward again to release it to the rearward, untilted position.

Note: Do not attempt to force the head restraint backward after it is tilted. Instead, continue tilting it forward until the head restraint releases to the upright position.

REMOVING THE HEADRESTRAINT

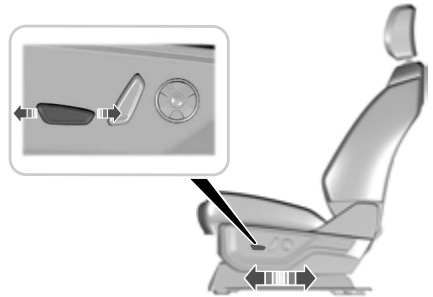
1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

Note: You cannot remove head restraints that have audio system speakers.

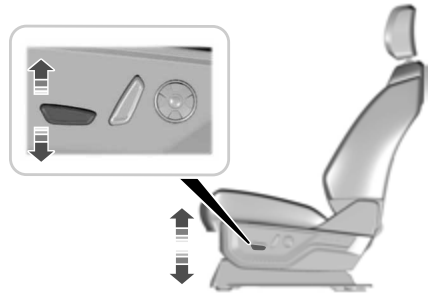
INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

MOVING THE SEAT BACKWARD AND FORWARD



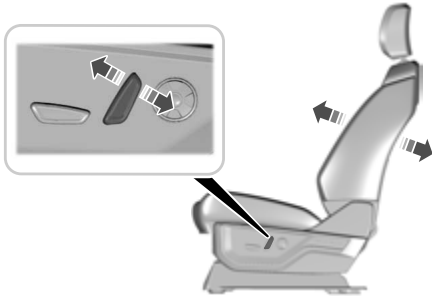
ADJUSTING THE SEAT CUSHION



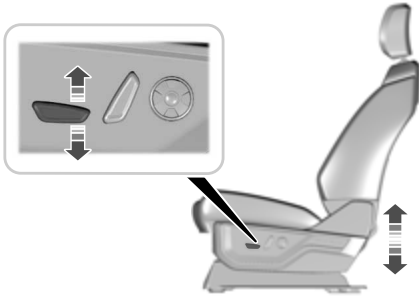
ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST

WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seatback before returning it to the original position.

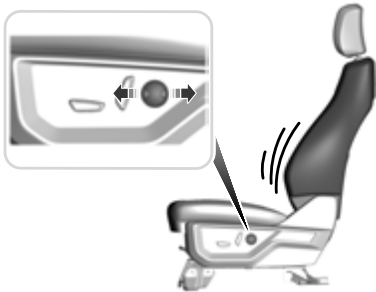
Front Seats



ADJUSTING THE SEAT HEIGHT



ADJUSTING THE LUMBAR SUPPORT



HEATED SEATS

HEATED SEAT PRECAUTIONS

⚠ WARNING: Use caution when using the heated seat if you are unable to feel pain to your skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical conditions. The heated seat could cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

⚠ WARNING: Do not poke sharp objects into the seat cushion or seat backrest. This could damage the heated seat element and cause it to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

⚠ WARNING: Do not place anything on the seat that blocks the heat, for example a seat cover or a cushion. This could cause the seat to overheat. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Do not:

- Place heavy objects on the seat.
- Operate the heated seat if water or any other liquid spills on the seat. Allow the seat to dry.

SWITCHING THE HEATED SEATS ON AND OFF

The vehicle must be running to use this feature.

Front Seats



Press the heated seat symbol to cycle through the various heat settings and off. The more indicators that display, the warmer the temperature of the seat.

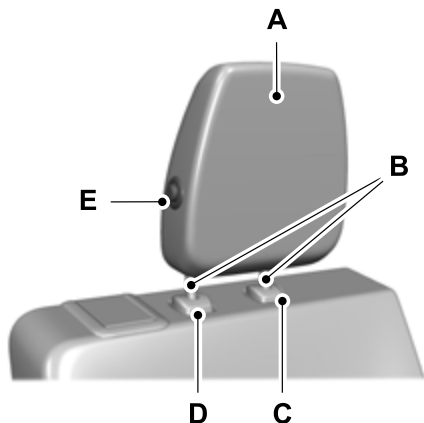
Note: *The heated seats may remain on after you remote start your vehicle, based on your remote start settings. The heated seats may also turn on when you start your vehicle if they were on when you switched your vehicle off.*

Rear Seats

MANUAL SEATS

HEADRESTRAINT COMPONENTS

Rear Seat Outermost Head Restraints



- D Guide sleeve unlock and remove button - if equipped.
- E Fold button - if equipped.

ADJUSTING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Pull the head restraint up to raise it.

To lower the head restraint:

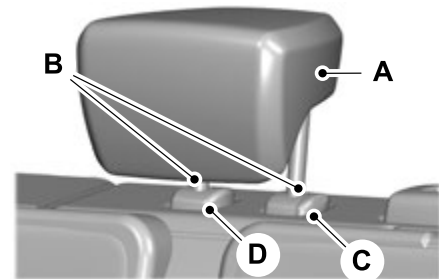
1. Press and hold the adjust and release button.
2. Push the head restraint down.

Press the fold button to fold the head restraint.

REMOVING THE HEADRESTRAINT

1. Pull up the head restraint until it reaches its highest position.
2. Press and hold the adjust and release button and the unlock and release button.
3. Pull up the head restraint.

Rear Seat Center Head Restraint



INSTALLING THE HEAD RESTRAINT

Align the steel stems into the guide sleeves and push the head restraint down until it locks.

The head restraints consist of:

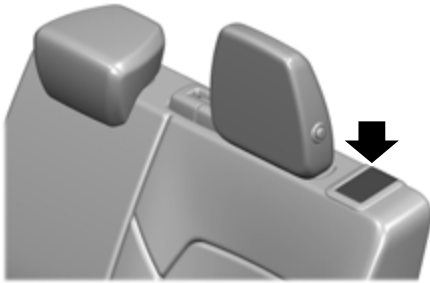
- A An energy absorbing head restraint.
- B Two steel stems.
- C Guide sleeve adjust and release button.

Rear Seats

ADJUSTING THE SEAT BACKREST



WARNING: Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.



Pull the lever up to fold the seat backrest fully forward.

Note: Make sure that the area under the seat is free of objects before folding the backrest.

To return the seat backrest to the upright position, rotate it up until it locks.

Note: To store the removable doors, the seat backrest must be in the upright position.

To recline the seat backrest to the optimal seating position, pull the lever up and push the backrest rearward.

Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM

The rear occupant alert system monitors vehicle conditions and notifies you to check for rear seat occupants when you switch the ignition off.

HOW DOES THE REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system monitors when rear doors have been opened and closed to indicate the potential presence of an occupant in the rear seat.

A message displays in the information and entertainment display screen and an audible warning sounds when you switch the ignition off after any of the following conditions have been met:

- A rear door is opened or closed while the ignition is on.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of a rear door opening and closing.
- You switch the ignition on within 15 minutes of the alert having displayed or sounded.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: On hot days, the temperature inside the vehicle can rise very quickly. Exposure of people or animals to these high temperatures for even a short time can cause death or serious heat related injuries, including brain damage. Small children are particularly at risk.



WARNING: Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The system does not function if any door is removed.

The system does not detect the presence of objects or passengers in the rear seat. It monitors when rear doors are opened and closed.

Note: *It is possible to receive an alert when there is no rear seat occupant, but alert conditions are met.*

Note: *It is possible to receive no alert when there is an occupant in the rear seat, if alert conditions are not met. For example, if a rear seat occupant does not enter the vehicle through a rear door.*

Note: *The audible warning does not sound when the front door is opened before you switch the ignition off.*

SWITCHING REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle**.
3. Switch **Rear Occupant Alert** on or off.

Note: *The default setting is on.*

Note: *Performing a master reset causes the system to switch on again.*

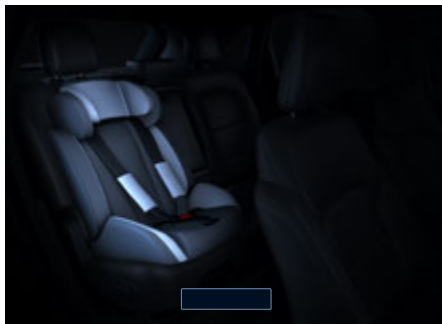
Rear Occupant Alert System (If Equipped)

Semiannual Reminder (If Equipped)

When you switch the system off, a message appears every six months as a reminder that the system is off. You can switch the system back on or leave it off.

The warning sounds for a short period of time.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM INDICATORS



Message
Check rear seats for occupants.

Displays when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

The message displays for a short period of time. Press **Close** to acknowledge and remove the message.

Note: Depending on your SYNC version, the graphic may look different from what you see here.

REAR OCCUPANT ALERT SYSTEM AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when you switch your vehicle off after the alert conditions are met.

USB Ports

LOCATING THE USB PORTS

Data Transfer USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.

Note: *These USB ports can also charge devices.*

Note: *Not all USB ports in your vehicle have data transfer capabilities.*

Note: *We recommend using only USB-IF certified cables and adapters. Non-certified cables and adapters may not work.*

Charge Only USB Ports



The USB ports could be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- On the upper instrument panel.
- Inside the media bin.
- Inside the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.
- In the trunk.

PLAYING MEDIA USING THE USB PORT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device to a data transfer USB port.



Press the audio button on the feature bar.

Select **Sources**.



Select the USB option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind.

CHARGING A DEVICE

Connect your device to the USB port.

USB Ports

Data Transfer USB Ports



You can charge your device through the data transfer USB port when SYNC is on.

Charge Only USB Ports



You can charge your device through the charge only USB port when the vehicle is in accessory mode or when the vehicle is running.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet is a socket that connects an electrical device to your vehicle's power supply.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not keep electrical devices plugged into the power outlet whenever the device is not in use. The outlet provides power when the vehicle is on. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not use an extension cord or connect multiple devices to the power outlet. Doing so could result in overloading the power outlet. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or property damage.

Note: *The vehicle provides up to 400 Watts when in park and up to 300 Watts when in drive mode. This wattage is divided between multiple outlets when in use at the same time.*

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

The power outlet is on the rear of the center console.

Rear of the Center Console



POWER OUTLET INDICATORS

The power outlet indicator illuminates to let you know the status of the system.

Indicator Status	Description
On	When the indicator light is on, the outlet is providing power.
Off	When the indicator light is off, there is no power to the outlet.
Flashing	When the indicator light is flashing, the outlet is in a fault mode.

Fault mode

The power outlet temporarily turns off power if the device exceeds the watt limit.

1. Unplug your device.

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 220V Power Outlet

2. Switch your vehicle off to let the system cool and reset the fault mode.
3. Switch your vehicle back on, but do not plug your device back in.
4. With your vehicle on, make sure the indicator light remains on.
5. Make sure your device does not exceed the power limits and then plug in your device.

Note: *If a fault occurs again, your device may exceed the capacity available from the power outlet.*

Power Outlet - Vehicles With: 12V Power Outlet

WHAT IS THE POWER OUTLET

The power outlet can power devices using a 12 V outlet adapter.

POWER OUTLET PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

When you switch the vehicle on, you can use the socket to power 12 V appliances with a maximum current rating of 20 A. Do not use the power point over the vehicle capacity of 12 V DC 240 W or a fuse could blow. Do not plug in any device that supplies power to the vehicle through the power points. This could result in damage to vehicle systems. Do not hang any accessory from the accessory plug. Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use. Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point.

To prevent the battery from running out of charge:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the vehicle is off.
- Do not leave devices plugged in overnight or when you park your vehicle for extended periods.

LOCATING THE POWER OUTLETS

Power outlets may be in the following locations:

- On the lower instrument panel.
- Inside the center console.
- On the front of the center console.
- On the rear of the center console.
- In the cargo area.
- On the passenger side floor panel.
- 3rd row on the quarter trim panels.

Wireless Accessory Charger

WHAT IS THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER

The wireless accessory charger allows you to charge one compatible Qi wireless charging device on the charging area.

WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Wireless charging devices can affect the operation of implanted medical devices, including cardiac pacemakers. If you have any implanted medical devices, we recommend that you consult with your physician.

Keep the charging area clean and remove foreign objects prior to charging a device.

Do not place items with a magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip, for example passports, parking tickets, transportation passes or credit cards, near the charging area when charging a device. Damage could occur to the magnetic strip or radio-frequency identification chip.

Do not place metal objects, for example remote controls, coins and candy wrappers, on or near the charging area when charging a device. Metal objects may heat up and degrade the charging performance, in addition to causing interruptions in charging.

Charging could be interrupted, degraded, or could stop if any of the following occur:

- The system detects a foreign object.
- The device is misaligned on the charging area.
- The device moves on the active charging area when the vehicle is in motion.

- The vehicle ambient temperature is too high.
- You attempt to charge a non-Qi compatible device on the wireless charger.

Note: During charging, the device and the charger could heat up, this is normal. If the battery gets hotter than usual, the device may stop charging.

LOCATING THE WIRELESS ACCESSORY CHARGER



The charging area is on the center console or in the media bin below the instrument panel.

CHARGING A WIRELESS DEVICE

Place the device on the center of the charging surface with the charging side down. The charging stops after your device reaches a full charge.

You can use the charger when the vehicle is in accessory mode, when the vehicle is running, or when SYNC is on.



Displays on the status bar when wireless charging is in progress.

Note: The charging performance may be affected if your device is in a case. It may be necessary to remove the case to wirelessly charge your device.

Note: Software and firmware updates may affect device compatibility, including the use of unofficial software or firmware. Customers should verify charging functionality with their specific devices in-vehicle.

Storage

GLOVE COMPARTMENT

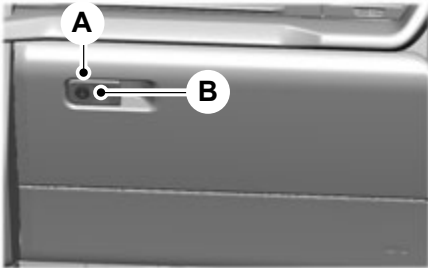
OPENING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT



Pull the latch to the left to open.

LOCKING THE GLOVE COMPARTMENT

You can lock lower glove compartment using the key.



- A Unlock.
- B Lock.

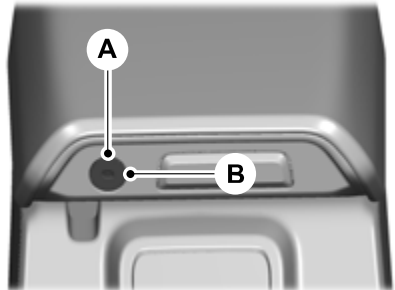
CENTER CONSOLE

OPENING THE CENTER CONSOLE



Push the latch to open the center console.

LOCKING THE CENTER CONSOLE



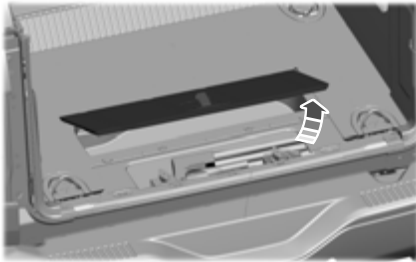
- A Unlock.
- B Lock.

You can lock the center console using the key.

Storage

UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

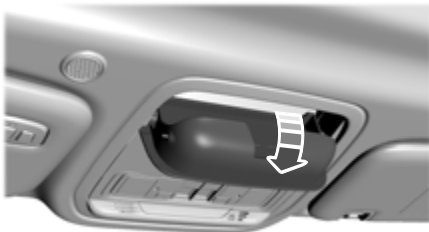
LOCATING THE LUGGAGE COMPARTMENT UNDER FLOOR STORAGE



Lift the strap to access the under floor storage in the luggage compartment.

GLASSES HOLDER

LOCATING THE GLASSES HOLDER



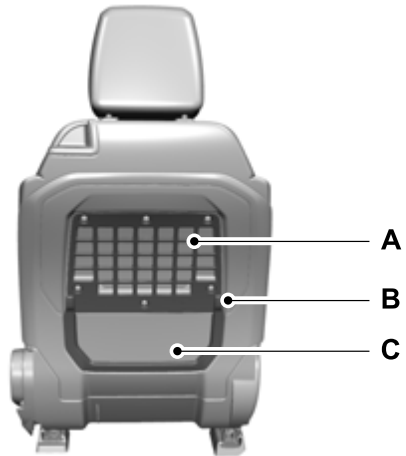
The glasses holder is in the overhead console.

Press near the rear edge of the door to open it.

MAP POCKET

LOCATING THE MAP POCKET

A map pocket and optional hook and MOLLE system are on the backs of the front seats.



- A. MOLLE system (if equipped).
- B. Hooks (if equipped).
- C. Map pocket.

Note: The recommended weight limit for this system is 3 kg.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

WARNING: Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes are toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

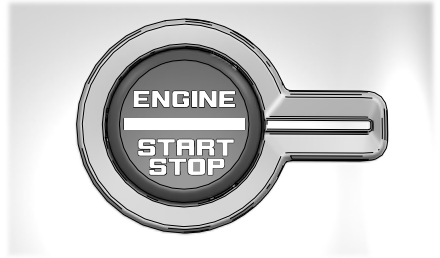
WARNING: Do not use starting fluid, for example ether, in the air intake system. Such fluid could cause immediate explosive damage to the engine and possible personal injury.

WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you stop your vehicle and leave the engine idling for long periods, we recommend that you do one of the following:

- Open the windows at least 2.5 cm.
- Set your climate control to outside air.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH



Switching the Ignition Off

When the ignition is on or in accessory mode, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

Switching the Ignition to Accessory Mode

When the ignition is off, press the push button ignition switch once without your foot on the brake pedal.

All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Note: *Your vehicle has a battery saver feature that shuts your vehicle off when it detects a certain amount of battery drain, or after about 30 minutes of inactivity in accessory mode.*

Note: *The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices, for example keys or a cell phone.*

Note: *You need a valid key inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.*

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING THE ENGINE

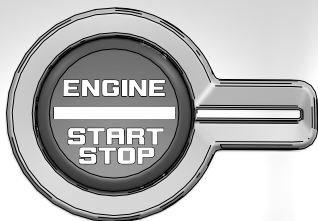
STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

Before starting your vehicle, check the following:

- Make sure that the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure that the parking brake is on.
- Make sure that the transmission is in park (P).

1. Fully press the brake pedal.

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.



2. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine may continue cranking for up to 15 seconds or until it starts.

Note: The engine takes longer to start at lower temperatures. It may crank for several seconds when very cold.

RESTARTING THE ENGINE AFTER STOPPING IT

The system allows you to start the engine within 10 seconds of switching it off, even if it does not detect a valid passive key.

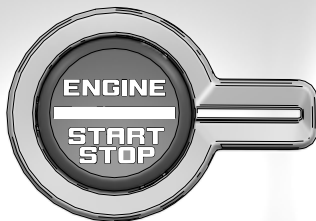
Within 10 seconds of switching the engine off, fully press the brake or clutch pedal and press the push button ignition switch. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start the engine if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

When you start the engine, it remains running until you press the push button ignition switch, even if your vehicle does not detect a valid passive key. If you open and close a door when the engine is running, the system searches for a valid passive key.

STOPPING THE ENGINE

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS STATIONARY

1. Shift into park (P).
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Wait until the engine reaches idle speed.



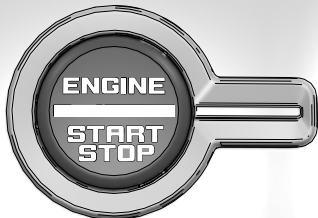
4. Press the push button ignition switch.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STOPPING THE ENGINE WHEN YOUR VEHICLE IS MOVING



WARNING: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.



1. Press and hold the push button ignition switch until the engine stops, or press it three times within two seconds.
2. Shift into neutral (N) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
3. Shift into park (P).
4. Apply the parking brake.

AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Automatic engine stop switches the engine off if it has been idling for an extended period to help you save fuel.

HOW DOES AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP WORK

Automatic engine stop turns the engine off. The ignition also turns off to save battery power. Before the engine shuts down, a message appears in the instrument cluster display showing a timer counting down. If you do not intervene within 30 seconds, the engine shuts down. Another message appears in the instrument cluster display to inform you that the engine has shut down to save fuel. Start your vehicle as you normally do.

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP ON AND OFF

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Vehicle settings**.
3. Switch **30min max idle** on or off.

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic shutdown. If you switch it off, it turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

OVERRIDING AUTOMATIC ENGINE STOP

Note: You cannot permanently switch off the automatic engine stop feature. When you switch it off temporarily, it turns on at the next ignition cycle.

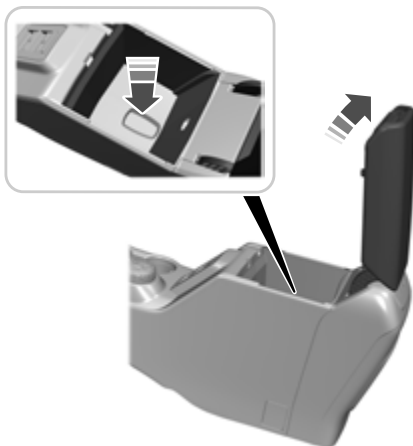
Starting and Stopping the Engine

You can stop the engine shutdown, or reset the timer, at any point before the 30-second countdown has expired by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the brake pedal or accelerator pedal.
- Pressing the **OK** or **RESET** button during the countdown.

ACCESSING THE PASSIVE KEY BACKUP POSITION

If you are unable to start the engine, do the following:



1. Open the center console storage compartment lid.
2. With the buttons facing upward and the unlock button facing the front of your vehicle, place the passive key into the backup slot.

3. With the key in this position, press the brake pedal then press the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – TROUBLESHOOTING

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – WARNING LAMPS

Malfunction Indicator Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running, the on-board diagnostics system is detecting a malfunction of the vehicle emission control system.

If it flashes, engine misfire could be occurring. Increased exhaust gas temperatures could damage the catalytic converter or other vehicle components. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Powertrain Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when the engine is running, this indicates a powertrain or four-wheel drive fault. If it flashes when you are driving, immediately reduce the vehicle speed. Avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration, and have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

If both lamps illuminate when the engine is running, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Continuing to drive your vehicle could cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Switch the ignition off and attempt to restart the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Cranking time exceeded	Displays if you exceed the starting time limit. You cannot attempt to start the engine for 15 minutes. If you cannot start the engine after 15 minutes passes, have your vehicle immediately checked.
Starting system malfunction	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
No key detected	Displays if the system does not detect a valid passive key.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

STARTING AND STOPPING THE ENGINE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is the engine idle speed high when I am starting the engine?

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting is optimized to minimize vehicle emissions and maximize cabin comfort and fuel economy.

Why does the engine not crank?

You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.

Why do I experience different driving characteristics?

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for about 8 km after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

Why can I not start the engine?

If you cannot start the engine after three attempts, wait 10 seconds and do the following:

1. Fully press the brake pedal or the clutch pedal.

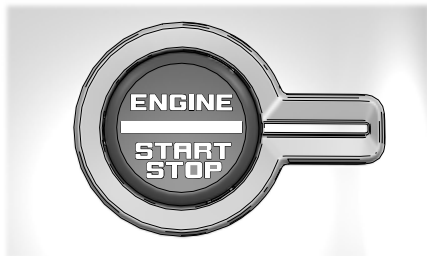
Note: Make sure the parking brake is applied.

Note: Make sure the transmission is in park (P) or neutral (N).

2. Fully press the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Press the push button ignition switch.

Note: The engine cranks for a short period of time and then it stops.

4. Release the accelerator pedal.



5. Press the push button ignition switch.

Why does the system not detect a passive key?

If the system does not detect a passive key and you are unable to start the engine, insert the passive key into the backup position and press the push button ignition switch to start the engine. See **Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position** (page 119).


Auto-Start-Stop


WHAT IS AUTO-START-STOP

[Auto Start-Stop Technology: Ford Cars and SUV's](#)

The system is designed to help reduce fuel consumption and CO₂ emissions by stopping the engine when it is idling, for example at traffic lights.

AUTO-START-STOP PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you open the hood or have any service or repair work completed. If you do not switch the ignition off, the engine could restart at any time. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

SWITCHING AUTO-START-STOP ON AND OFF

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on.



Press the button to switch the system off.

Note: **OFF** illuminates in the switch.

Note: Deactivating the system using the button lasts only one key cycle.

Press the button again to switch the system back on.

Note: The system turns off if it detects a malfunction. If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

STOPPING THE ENGINE


Stop your vehicle, keep your foot on the brake pedal and the transmission in drive (D).

RESTARTING THE ENGINE

Release the brake pedal or press the accelerator pedal.

A message appears in the instrument cluster display if the system requires you to take action.

AUTO-START-STOP INDICATORS

 **WARNING:** The system may require the engine to automatically restart when the auto-start-stop indicator illuminates green or flashes amber. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates green when the engine stops. It flashes amber and a message appears when you need to take action.



The Auto-Start-Stop indicator illuminates gray with a strikethrough when the system is not available.

Note: You can display the reason why the system is not available in the information display.

Auto-Start-Stop

AUTO-START-STOP – TROUBLESHOOTING

AUTO-START-STOP – INFORMATION MESSAGES

A message appears in the information display if the system requires you to take action.

Message	Condition	Action
Auto StartStop Press brake to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Press a pedal to start engine	The system needs to restart the engine but requires your confirmation.	Press the brake pedal or the accelerator pedal to restart the engine.
Auto StartStop Shift to P Restart engine	The System is not functioning.	Shift in park (P) and restart the engine.

Auto-Start-Stop

AUTO-START-STOP – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the engine not always stop when I expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system does not stop the engine if:

- The driver door is open.
- Your vehicle is at high altitude.
- The heated windshield is on.
- The engine is warming up.
- The outside temperature is too low or too high.
- The battery charge is low.
- The battery temperature is outside the optimal operating range.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Why does the engine sometimes restart when I do not expect it to?

The system is designed to work in a way that complements other vehicle systems, allowing them to operate at optimum performance.

The system restarts the engine if:

- You switch the heated windshield on.
- You switch maximum defrost on.
- Your vehicle starts to roll downhill in neutral.
- The engine is required to run to maintain adequate brake system assistance.
- The engine is required to run to maintain interior climate and reduce fogging.

Can I permanently switch the system off?


No. The system plays an important role in reducing the fuel consumption and the CO₂ emissions.


Will the frequent engine starts cause parts to wear out?

Your vehicle has an enhanced battery and starter motor that are designed for the increased number of engine starts.


Fuel and Refueling


FUEL AND REFUELING PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

 **WARNING:** The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

 **WARNING:** Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

 **WARNING:** Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

 **WARNING:** When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

 **WARNING:** Read and follow all the instructions on the pump island.


Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Switch the engine off before refueling.

- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses, if worn, flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY

SELECTING THE CORRECT FUEL

 **WARNING:** Do not mix diesel with gasoline, gasohol or alcohol. This could cause an explosion.

Fuel and Refueling



WARNING: Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds, for example manganese-based. They could damage the emission system.



Use a minimum 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 20% (E20).

Note: *We recommend that you only use high quality fuel. We do not recommend the use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments.*

LOCATING THE FUEL FILLER FUNNEL

The fuel filler funnel is in the rear floor compartment with the jack and tools.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

FILLING A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity. This can cause a fire if you are filling an ungrounded fuel container.

Use the following guidelines to avoid electrostatic charge build-up, which can produce a spark, when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Only use an approved fuel container to transfer fuel to your vehicle. Place the container on the ground when filling it.
- Do not fill a fuel container when it is inside your vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container when filling it.
- Do not use a device that holds the fuel pump nozzle lever in the fill position.

ADDING FUEL FROM A PORTABLE FUEL CONTAINER



WARNING: Do not insert the nozzle of a fuel container or an aftermarket funnel into the fuel filler neck. This may damage the fuel system filler neck or its seal and cause fuel to run onto the ground.



WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

Fuel and Refueling



WARNING: Do not dispose of fuel in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, use the fuel filler funnel included with your vehicle. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 126).

Note: Do not use aftermarket funnels as they may not work with the capless fuel system and can damage it.

When refueling the vehicle fuel tank from a fuel container, do the following:

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.



2. Fully insert the fuel filler funnel into the fuel filler inlet.
3. Add fuel to your vehicle from the fuel container.
4. Remove the fuel filler funnel.
5. Fully close the fuel filler door.
6. Clean the fuel filler funnel and place it back in your vehicle or correctly dispose of it.

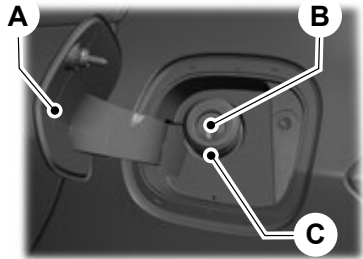
Note: If your vehicle runs out of fuel add a minimum of 5 L of fuel to restart the engine.

Note: You may need to switch the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. When restarting, cranking time takes a few seconds longer than normal.

Note: Extra funnels can be purchased from an authorized dealer if you choose to dispose of the funnel.

REFUELING

REFUELING SYSTEM OVERVIEW



- A Fuel filler door.
- B Fuel filler inlet.
- C Fuel tank filler pipe.

REFUELING YOUR VEHICLE

[Easy Fuel Capless Fuel Filler](#)



WARNING: When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Fuel and Refueling

⚠ WARNING: The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING: Do not pry open the fuel tank filler valve. This could damage the fuel system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

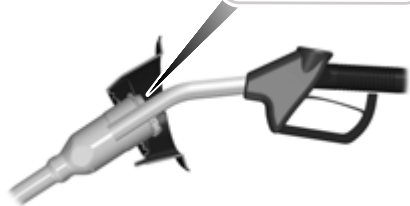
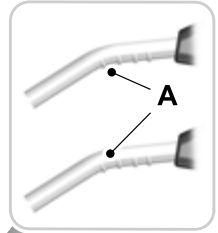
⚠ WARNING: Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.

⚠ WARNING: Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.

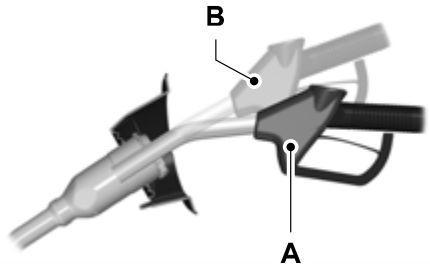
⚠ WARNING: Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

⚠ WARNING: Wait at least five seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

1. Fully open the fuel filler door.
2. Select the correct fuel pump nozzle for your vehicle.

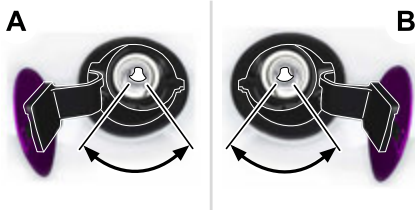


3. Insert the fuel pump nozzle up to the first notch. Keep the fuel pump nozzle resting on the fuel tank filler pipe.

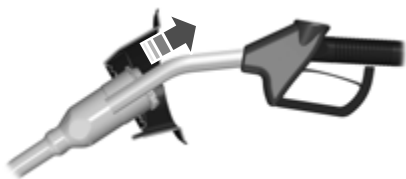


4. Hold the fuel pump nozzle in position A when refueling. Holding the fuel pump nozzle in position B can affect the flow of fuel and shut off the fuel pump nozzle before the fuel tank is full.

Fuel and Refueling



5. Operate the fuel pump nozzle within the area shown. Refer to A for left hand drive or B for right hand drive.



6. When the pump shuts off, wait five seconds, then raise the fuel pump nozzle and slowly remove it.
7. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel. Incorrect fuel use could cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Advertised Capacity

The advertised capacity is the maximum amount of fuel that you can add to the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

In addition, the fuel tank contains an empty reserve. The empty reserve is an unspecified amount of fuel that remains in the fuel tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Note: The amount of fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range.

FUEL CONSUMPTION REGULATIONS

Energy Consumption (Off-Vehicle Charging) Fuel Economy (Internal Combustion Engine and Not Off-Vehicle Charging) and CO₂ Emissions

The declared WLTP fuel/energy consumptions, CO₂ emissions and electric range are determined according to the technical requirements and specifications of the European Regulations (EC) 715/2007 and (EU) 2017/1151 as last amended. The applied standard test procedures enable comparison between different vehicle types and different manufacturers.

European Directive 1999/94/EC

In addition to the fuel/energy efficiency of a car, driving behaviour as well as other non-technical factors play a role in determining a car's fuel/energy consumption, CO₂ emissions and electric range. CO₂ is the main greenhouse gas responsible for global warming. A guide on fuel economy and CO₂ emissions which contains data for all new passenger car models is available at any point of sale free of charge.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL AND REFUELING – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUEL AND REFUELING – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

FUEL AND REFUELING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Refueling System Warning

If the fuel tank filler valve does not fully close, a message could appear in the instrument cluster display.

Message
Check fuel fill inlet

If the message appears, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Fully open the fuel filler door.
5. Check the fuel tank filler valve for any debris that may be restricting its movement.
6. Remove any debris from the fuel tank filler valve.
7. Fully insert a fuel pump nozzle or the fuel filler funnel provided with your vehicle into the fuel filler pipe. See **Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel** (page 126). This action should dislodge any debris that may be preventing the fuel tank filler valve from fully closing.
8. Remove the fuel pump nozzle or fuel filler funnel from the fuel filler pipe.

9. Fully close the fuel filler door.

Note: *The message may not immediately reset. If the message continues to appear and a warning lamp illuminates, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Catalytic Converter

WHAT IS THE CATALYTIC CONVERTER

The catalytic converter is part of your vehicle's emissions system and filters harmful pollutants from the exhaust gas.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.



WARNING: The normal operating temperature of the exhaust system is very high. Never work around or attempt to repair any part of the exhaust system until it has cooled. Use special care when working around the catalytic converter. The catalytic converter heats up to a very high temperature after only a short period of engine operation and stays hot after the engine is switched off.



WARNING: Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

To avoid damaging the catalytic converter:

- Do not crank the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not run the engine with a spark plug lead disconnected.
- Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 245).

- Use the correct fuel. See **Fuel and Refueling** (page 125).
- Do not switch the ignition off when your vehicle is moving.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Have the items listed in scheduled maintenance information performed according to the specified schedule.

Note: *Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, or services a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working.*

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CATALYTIC CONVERTER – WARNING LAMPS


Your vehicle has an on-board diagnostics system that monitors the emission control system. If any of the following warning lamps illuminate, this may indicate that the on-board diagnostics system has detected an emission control system malfunction.





Continuing to drive your vehicle may cause reduced power or the engine to stop. Failure to respond to a warning lamp may cause damage that your vehicle Warranty may not cover. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Automatic Transmission

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** Apply the parking brake, shift into park (P), switch the ignition off and remove the key before you leave your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** When your vehicle is stationary, keep the brake pedal fully pressed when shifting gears. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury, death or property damage.

 **WARNING:** Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITIONS

PARK (P)

 **WARNING:** Shift into park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In park (P) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

Note: A tone sounds if you attempt to exit your vehicle without the vehicle in park (P).

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if the 12 V battery has run out of charge.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) if a fuse is blown.

Note: Your vehicle may not shift out of park (P) unless the key or remote control is inside your vehicle.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply when you power your vehicle on with the selector in park (P).

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) without fully pressing the brake pedal.

Note: The electronic parking brake could apply if you shift to park (P) on a slope.

Note: Do not manually release the parking brake when the selector is in park (P). See **Automatically Releasing the Electric Parking Brake** (page 151).

REVERSE (R)

 **WARNING:** Shift into reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In reverse (R) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

NEUTRAL (N)

 **WARNING:** In neutral (N) your vehicle is free to roll.

In neutral (N) power is not transmitted to the driven wheels.

DRIVE (D)

In drive (D) power is transmitted to the driven wheels.

Automatic Transmission

MANUAL (M)

In manual (M) you can select a specific gear. See **Manually Shifting Gears** (page 133).

Note: We recommend using this mode for driving on hilly or mountainous roads or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 229).

SPORT (S)

In sport (S) your vehicle holds gears longer.

Note: We recommend using this mode for a sportier feel or when driving on hilly or mountainous roads.

SHIFTING YOUR VEHICLE INTO GEAR



1. Fully press down on the brake pedal.
2. Press the front button on the shifter and move the gearshift lever into the desired gear.
3. When you finish driving, come to a complete stop.

4. Press the front button on the shifter, move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in park (P).

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION POSITION INDICATORS

The instrument cluster displays the current position.



Note: The position could illuminate on the transmission selector.

MANUALLY SHIFTING GEARS

SHIFTING USING THE BUTTONS ON THE SELECTOR LEVER

The instrument cluster displays the current gear. The current gear flashes when your vehicle cannot shift into the requested gear. Your vehicle will not shift if the requested gear raises or lowers the engine speed beyond the limit.

Your vehicle could shift when you fully press the accelerator or brake pedal.

Note: Prolonged driving with high engine speed could cause vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: Drive modes could affect when the vehicle shifts into the requested gear.

Automatic Transmission



Manually Shifting Gears in Drive (D)

Use this feature to temporarily change gears.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking or driving on hilly or mountainous roads.

- Press any button to switch the feature on.
- Press the upper (+) button to upshift.
- Press the lower (-) button to downshift.
- Hold the (+) button for a few seconds to switch the feature off.

Note: The feature switches off after a short period of time if neither button is pressed.

Manually Shifting Gears in Sport (S)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads, or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 229).

- Press any button to switch the feature on.
- Press the upper (+) button to upshift.
- Press the lower (-) button to downshift.
- Hold the (+) button for a few seconds to switch the feature off.

Manually Shifting Gears in Manual (M)

Use this feature to select a specific gear.

Note: We recommend using this feature for engine braking, driving on hilly or mountainous roads, or when towing a trailer. See **Towing a Trailer** (page 229).

- Shift to manual (M) to switch the feature on.
- Press the upper (+) button to upshift.
- Press the lower (-) button to downshift.
- Shift to drive (D) to switch the feature off.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Transmission Not In Park (P) Audible Warning

Sounds if any of the following occur:

- You switch your vehicle off before shifting into park (P).
- You open the driver door before shifting into park (P).
- You unlash your seatbelt before shifting into park (P) when the driver door is removed.

Four-Wheel Drive

HOW DOES FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE WORK - 4X4 WITH PART TIME ENGAGEMENT

[Bronco 4x4 Systems](#)

4x4 With Part Time Engagement (If Equipped)

This system offers the driver two-wheel drive high, four-wheel drive high, and four-wheel drive low as available modes of operation. When you select either four-wheel drive high or four-wheel drive low, the system provides mechanically locked four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels for use in off-road or slippery conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud. Selecting four-wheel drive low also provides additional gearing for increased torque multiplication for conditions like deep sand, steep slopes, or pulling heavy objects.

HOW DOES FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE WORK - ADVANCED 4X4 WITH 4A MODE

[Bronco 4x4 Systems](#)

Advanced 4x4 With Automatic On Demand Engagement (If Equipped)

This system monitors various vehicle sensory inputs to provide an increased level of performance. This system offers the driver two-wheel drive high, four-wheel drive auto, four-wheel drive high, and four-wheel drive low as available modes of operation. When you select four-wheel drive auto, the system continuously varies power to the front wheels for optimum performance for all on-road conditions. When you select either four-wheel drive high or four-wheel drive low, the system provides electronically locked power to the

front and rear wheels for use in off-road or slippery conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud. Selecting four-wheel drive low also provides additional gearing for increased torque multiplication for conditions like deep sand, steep slopes, or pulling heavy objects.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.



WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

Four-Wheel Drive

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

Do not use four-wheel drive high or four-wheel drive low mode on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so can produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and can damage driveline components. Four-wheel drive high or four-wheel drive low mode is only for use on consistently slippery or loose surfaces. Use of four-wheel drive low mode on these surfaces could produce some noise, such as occasional clunks, but should not damage driveline components.

For vehicles with an electronic shift-on-the-fly transfer case, the driveline could become mechanically blocked when attempting to shift out of a four-wheel drive mode on dry, hard surfaced roads.

Note: *When your vehicle comes with the 4x4 part-time selectable engagement transfer case and you are transitioning from consistently loose or slippery surfaces, be sure the four-wheel drive system is not mechanically blocked once you are on dry, hard surfaced roads in two-wheel drive high.*

Note: *In certain scenarios, where the four-wheel drive system has difficulty engaging, a **To engage 4x4 slow to 3 mph** or **To engage 4x4 slow to 5 km/h** message could appear in the instrument cluster. You can also see this message when engaging the four-wheel drive system in extreme cold climates at the beginning of the drive cycle. Once the driveline warms up, shifting to four-wheel drive can resume as normal.*

Operating Four-Wheel Drive with a Spare or Mismatched Tires

On four-wheel drive vehicles, the size of the spare tire can affect the four-wheel drive system.

If there is a significant difference between the size of the spare tire and the remaining tires, you could have limited four-wheel drive functionality, added noise, discomfort and driveline damage.

Due to normal tire wear, your spare tire is not necessarily the same size as your on-road tires, which makes your spare tire a dissimilar size. Use the spare tire on a limited basis only.

When driving with a dissimilar wheel and tire assembly do not:

- Exceed 80 km/h when operating in a four-wheel drive mode.
- Select a four-wheel drive mode unless the vehicle is stationary.
- Use a four-wheel drive mode on dry pavement.

You could have limited four-wheel drive functionality when driving with a dissimilar wheel and tire assembly, especially when driving in a mechanically locked four-wheel drive mode. You can experience the following:

- Additional noise from the transfer case or other drive components.
- Difficulty shifting in and out of a mechanically locked four-wheel drive mode.
- Driveline component damage.

Mechanical Shift Blocking

On vehicles with an electronic shift-on-the-fly transfer case, the transfer case distributes torque to the front wheels by mechanically interlocking the front and rear driveshafts together. Various external factors can affect shifting performance of this type of system including, but not limited to:

- Vehicle acceleration.
- Dissimilar tire sizes.
- High steering input.

Four-Wheel Drive

For vehicles with an electronic shift-on-the-fly transfer case, when shifting into two-wheel drive high on dry, hard surfaced roads, we recommend that you follow the following procedure to reduce the likelihood of a mechanical shift block:

1. When driving straight, come to a complete stop on a flat, horizontal surface.
2. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, shift into park (P). For vehicles with a manual transmission, press the clutch.
3. Select 2H and wait for the 2H LED to become solid.
4. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, shift into reverse (R). For vehicles with a manual transmission, select reverse (R) and release the clutch. Let the vehicle roll backward up to 1 m and press the brake.
5. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, shift into drive (D). For vehicles with a manual transmission, press the clutch in again, select a forward gear and release the clutch. Let the vehicle roll forward up to 1 m.

If the system is mechanically blocked, one or more of the following actions can relieve the mechanical shift block:

- Momentary acceleration.
- Momentary braking.
- Bringing the vehicle to a stop.
- Shifting the transmission to neutral and back to drive.
- Shifting the transmission to reverse and back to drive.
- Driving the vehicle around a tight turn at a slow speed.

SWITCHING FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE ON AND OFF

A vehicle that comes with four-wheel drive, when selected, has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction, which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

On some four-wheel drive models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to four-wheel drive while the vehicle is moving can cause a momentary clunk and ratcheting sound. These sounds are normal as the front drivetrain comes up to speed and are not cause for concern.

SELECTING A FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODE - 4X4 WITH PART TIME ENGAGEMENT



To select a four-wheel drive mode, push the button.

Four-Wheel Drive

- 2H - Two-wheel drive high.
- 4H - Four-wheel drive high. See **Four-Wheel Drive High** (page 139).
- 4L - Four-wheel drive low. See **Four-Wheel Drive Low** (page 140).

Note: Do not perform this operation when you have cruise control or trail control selected and active. The system may not shift as expected.

Note: Do not perform this operation if the rear wheels are slipping or when applying the accelerator pedal or when driving in a tight turn.

Note: Momentarily releasing the accelerator pedal when a shift in progress message displays can improve engagement or disengagement performance.

Note: When the light is solid, the system has achieved the desired four-wheel drive mode. When a selected four-wheel drive mode light is blinking, the system is attempting to shift to that specific four-wheel drive mode.

Note: When you achieve recreational towing, all lights are off and Neutral Tow Enabled Leave Transmission in Neutral appears in the instrument cluster display.

Shifting to or from Four-Wheel Drive Low

1. Bring your vehicle to a stop.
2. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, place in neutral (N). For vehicles with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal.
3. Push 4L on the four-wheel drive mode selector.

Note: A **4x4 shift in progress** message appears in the instrument cluster display indicating the shift is in progress. If any of the previous shift conditions are not met, the shift should not occur and the instrument cluster display can guide you through the proper shifting procedures.

Note: If **Shift delayed Pull forward** displays in the instrument cluster display, place the transmission in a forward gear, move your vehicle forward approximately 1.5 m, and shift the transmission back to neutral (N) to allow the transfer case to complete the range shift.

SELECTING A FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODE - ADVANCED 4X4 WITH 4A MODE



To select a four-wheel drive mode, push the button.

- 2H - Two-wheel drive high.
- 4A - Four-wheel drive Auto. See **Four-Wheel Drive Auto** (page 139).

Four-Wheel Drive

- 4H – Four-wheel drive high. See **Four-Wheel Drive High** (page 139).
- 4L – Four-wheel drive low. See **Four-Wheel Drive Low** (page 140).

Note: Do not perform this operation when you have cruise control or trail control selected and active. The system may not shift as expected.

Note: Do not perform this operation if the rear wheels are slipping or when applying the accelerator pedal.

Note: When the light is solid, the system has achieved the desired four-wheel drive mode. When a selected four-wheel drive mode LED is blinking, the system is attempting to shift to that specific four-wheel drive mode.

Note: When all lights are blinking, have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Note: When you achieve recreational towing, all lights are off and Neutral Tow Enabled Leave Transmission in Neutral appears in the instrument cluster display.

Shifting to or from Four-Wheel Drive Low

1. Bring your vehicle to a stop.
2. For vehicles with an automatic transmission, place in neutral (N). For vehicles with a manual transmission, fully press the clutch pedal.
3. Push 4L on the four-wheel drive mode selector.

Note: A **4x4 shift in progress** message appears in the instrument cluster display indicating the shift is in progress. If any of the previous shift conditions are not met, the shift should not occur and the instrument cluster display can guide you through the proper shifting procedures.

Note: If **Shift delayed Pull forward** displays in the instrument cluster display, place the transmission in a forward gear, move your vehicle forward approximately 1.5 m, and shift the transmission back to neutral (N) to allow the transfer case to complete the range shift.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE MODES

TWO-WHEEL DRIVE HIGH

Two-wheel drive high is for general on-road driving. Power is sent to the rear wheels only.

Note: Two-wheel drive high can turn on or off based on Drive Mode selection. See **G.O.A.T. Mode Control** (page 191).

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE AUTO (if Equipped)

Four-wheel drive auto provides electronically controlled four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels, as required, for increased traction in varying on-road conditions. The four-wheel drive auto tuning varies based on selected Drive Mode. See **Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode** (page 137).

Note: Four-wheel drive auto can turn on or off automatically based on Drive Mode selection. See **Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode** (page 137).

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE HIGH

Four-wheel drive high provides electronically or mechanically locked four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels for use in off-road or winter conditions such as deep snow, sand or mud. This mode is not for use on dry pavement.

Four-Wheel Drive

Note: *Four-wheel drive high can turn on or off automatically based on Drive Mode selection.*

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE LOW

Four-wheel drive low provides electronically or mechanically locked four-wheel drive power to both the front and rear wheels for use on low traction surfaces, but does so with additional gearing for increased torque multiplication. This mode is only for off-road conditions such as deep sand, steep slopes, or pulling heavy objects.

Note: *Four-wheel drive low can turn on or off automatically based on drive mode selection.*

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE INDICATORS

Two-wheel Drive High



Illuminates briefly when two-wheel drive high is selected.

Four-wheel Drive Auto (If Equipped)



Illuminates when four-wheel drive auto is selected.

Four-wheel Drive High



Illuminates when four-wheel drive high is selected.

Four-wheel Drive Low



Illuminates when four-wheel drive low is selected.

TRANSFER CASE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

See **Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and Specification** (page 323).

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – WARNING LAMPS



Illuminates when a four-wheel drive or power train fault is present.

Note: *When a system fault is present, the system can typically remain in whichever mode was selected prior to the fault condition occurring. It does not default to two-wheel drive in all circumstances. When this warning is displayed, have your vehicle serviced by an authorized dealer.*

Four-Wheel Drive

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
For 4L slow to a stop	Displays when the driver attempts to shift into four-wheel drive low when traveling at too high of a speed.
For 4L, shift to N.	Displays when the driver attempts to shift into four-wheel drive low without the transmission in neutral (N).
For 4L, press clutch.	Displays when the driver attempts to shift into four-wheel drive low without the clutch pedal pressed.
To exit 4L slow to a stop	Displays when the driver attempts to shift out of four-wheel drive low when traveling at too high of a speed.
To exit 4L, shift to N.	Displays when the driver attempts to shift out of four-wheel drive low without the transmission in neutral (N).
To exit 4L, press clutch.	Displays when the driver attempts to shift out of four-wheel drive low without the clutch pedal pressed.
4x4 shift in progress	Displays when the four-wheel drive system is shifting into and out of two-wheel drive high or between high and low ranges.
4x4 temporarily locked	Displays when the four-wheel drive system detects a driving condition which temporarily requires greater four-wheel drive performance. The system resumes normal function after the system no longer detects these driving conditions.
4x4 temporarily disabled	Displays when the four-wheel system detects elevated system temperature and temporarily stops providing power to the front wheels. The system resumes normal function when the system temperature returns to normal.
4x4 Restored	Displays when the four-wheel drive system resumes normal function.
Shift delayed Pull forward	Displays when the transfer case is not able to complete a shift and requires forward motion to complete the shift.
4x4 OFF	Displays when the system has become disabled due to mismatched tires or an external fault.

Four-Wheel Drive

Message	Details
Neutral tow enabled Leave transmission in neutral	Displays when neutral tow mode has been successfully engaged.
Neutral tow disabled	Displays when neutral tow mode has been successfully disengaged.
Selected 4x4 mode not available in current drive mode	Displays when the driver selects a four-wheel drive mode that is disallowed in the currently selected drive mode.
To engage 4x4 slow to 3 mph	Displays when the system is unable to engage four-wheel drive high and requires the driver to slow down before attempting to engage.
To engage 4x4 slow to 5 km/h	Displays when the system is unable to engage four-wheel drive high and requires the driver to slow down before attempting to engage.
To engage 4x4 release accelerator pedal	Displays when the four-wheel drive system requires the accelerator pedal to be released to perform the shift into four-wheel drive mode.
4x4 Performance reduced See manual	Displays when the system has entered a degraded mode due to mismatched tires.
Check 4x4	A four-wheel drive system fault is present. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Shift to Neutral	Displays when the system requires an additional transmission shift to neutral (N) to complete a transfer case shift.

Electronic Locking Differential (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL

The electronic locking differential is a device housed in the front or rear axle and, when activated allows both wheels on that axle to turn at the same speed. The electronic locking differential can provide additional traction should your vehicle become stuck. You can activate the differential electronically and shift it on the fly within the operating speed range. The electronic differential automatically disengages when the vehicle speed exceeds a set value and it automatically reengages when the vehicle speed goes below a set value. See **Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off** (page 143). It also automatically engages based on certain selected G.O.A.T modes. See **G.O.A.T. Mode Control** (page 191). The electronic locking differential is for use in mud, rocks, sand, or any off-road condition where you need maximum traction. It is not for use on dry pavement.

Note: The electronic locking differentials are for off-road use only and not for use on dry pavement. Using the electronic locking differentials on dry pavement results in increased tire wear, noise and vibration or driveline damage.

Note: The front electronic locking differential is only available in four-wheel drive low (4L).

Note: Locking the front differential reduces your ability to make tight turning maneuvers and creates additional resistance to steering inputs.

Front Electronic Locking Differential Engagement Speed and Availability

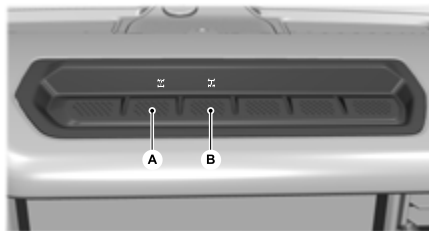
Four-Wheel Drive Mode	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-Engagement Speed
4L	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h

Note: Switching the electronic locking differentials off while turning results in disengagement difficulties. If the electronic locking differential has difficulty disengaging, release the accelerator pedal and turn the steering wheel back and forth in small increments while maintaining control and following a straight line.

SWITCHING THE ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL ON AND OFF

Bronco 4x4 Systems

Activating the Electronic Locking Differential



- A Front locking differential switch
- B Rear locking differential switch

You can activate the front or rear locking differential by pressing the switch on the center switch pack.

Note: Do not perform this operation when cruise control or trail control is selected and active. The differential could have difficulty engaging.

Electronic Locking Differential (If Equipped)

Rear Electronic Locking Differential Engagement Speed and Availability

G.O.A.T Modes (Four-Wheel Drive Modes)	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-Engagement Speed
Normal (2H,4A, 4H)	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h
Eco (2H, 4A, 4H)	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h
Sport (2H, 4A, 4H)	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h
Slippery (2H, 4A, 4H)	32 km/h	41 km/h	32 km/h
Deep Snow/Sand (4H, 4L) ¹	No speed limit	No speed limit	No speed limit
Mud/Ruts (4H, 4L) ¹			
Baja (2H, 4H, 4L)			
Rock Crawl (4L) ¹			

¹Automatically engages when you select these G.O.A.T modes. You have the ability to manually override the automatic engagement by pressing the electronic locking differential switch.

G.O.A.T Modes (Four-Wheel Drive Modes)	Maximum Engagement Speed	Automatic Disengagement Speed	Automatic Re-Engagement Speed
4L	No speed limit	No speed limit	No speed limit

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL INDICATORS



Rear locking differential Indicator.



Front locking differential Indicator.

If the front or rear indicator in the cluster is amber, both wheels of the indicated axle are locked together providing additional traction.

If the electronic locking differential is selected and the indicator in the cluster is gray or turns from amber to gray while driving, one of the following has occurred:

- Your vehicle speed is too high.
- The accelerator pedal is too high during an engagement attempt.

Electronic Locking Differential (If Equipped)

- Your vehicle is experiencing an anti-lock brake activation.
- The left and right wheel speed difference is too high during an engagement attempt.

If the electronic locking differential is selected and the indicator in the cluster does not illuminate, one of the following has occurred:

- The electronic locking differential is not allowed in the current G.O.A.T mode and is accompanied by **SELECTED LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL NOT AVAILABLE IN CURRENT Drive Mode** in the instrument cluster display.
- The electronic locking differential is not allowed in the current 4x4 mode and is accompanied by **SELECTED LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL NOT AVAILABLE IN CURRENT 4x4 MODE** in the instrument cluster display.
- The system has malfunctioned and is accompanied by **CHECK LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL** in the instrument cluster display. See your authorized dealer for assistance.

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRONIC LOCKING DIFFERENTIAL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Selected locking differential not available in current drive mode	The selected electronic locking differential is not available in current G.O.A.T mode. See G.O.A.T. Mode Control (page 191).
Selected locking differential not available in current 4x4 mode	The selected electronic locking differential is not available in your current four-wheel drive mode. See Four-Wheel Drive (page 135).
To engage locking differential release accelerator pedal	The selected electronic locking differential requires that you release the accelerator pedal in order to engage.
Check Locking Differential	An electronic locking differential system fault is present. See your authorized dealer as soon as possible.

The following conditions affect the electronic locking differential:

Electronic Locking Differential (If Equipped)

- Based on G.O.A.T mode selection, the rear electronic locking differential does not engage if your vehicle speed is above 32 km/h.
- The front electronic locking differential does not engage if your vehicle speed is above 32 km/h in four-wheel drive low (4L).
- Based on G.O.A.T mode selection, the electronic locking differential automatically disengages at speeds above 41 km/h and automatically re-engages at speeds below 32 km/h.
- The electronic locking differential may not engage if you press your accelerator pedal during an engagement attempt. A message may display in the instrument display guiding you to release the accelerator pedal.
- In four-wheel drive low (4L), the front electronic locking differential automatically disengages at speeds above 41 km/h and automatically re-engages at speeds below 32 km/h.
- The AdvanceTrac system has the ability to take over control of the electronic locking differential and disable it during driving maneuvers when necessary.

release the accelerator pedal and turn the steering wheel in the opposite direction when rolling. We recommend engaging and disengaging the electronic locking differential at a stop when you mount a spare or mismatched tire on either axle.

Operating Electronic Locking Differential With a Spare or Mismatched Tires

On vehicles with an electronic locking differential, the size of the spare tire can affect performance of the system. If there is a significant difference between the two rear tires or two front tires, you may have limited electronic locking differential functionality. If the electronic locking differential has difficulty disengaging,

Brakes

BRAKE PRECAUTIONS

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when leaving a car wash or driving from standing water to dry the brakes.

Note: Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country where your vehicle was originally built, the stoplamps could flash during heavy braking. The hazard warning flashers could also turn on when your vehicle comes to a stop.

ANTI-LOCK BRAKING SYSTEM

BRAKE OVER ACCELERATOR

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Move the transmission to park (P), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal for any interference. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the nearest authorized dealer.

LOCATING THE BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

- See **Under Hood Overview** (page 261).

CHECKING THE BRAKE FLUID



WARNING: Do not use any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid as this will reduce brake efficiency. Use of incorrect fluid could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Only use brake fluid from a sealed container. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage or failure. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in the loss of vehicle control, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



WARNING: The brake system could be affected if the brake fluid level is below the **MIN** mark or above the **MAX** mark on the brake fluid reservoir.



1. Park your vehicle on a level surface.
2. Look at the brake fluid reservoir to see where the brake fluid level is relative to the **MIN** and the **MAX** marks on the reservoir.

Note: To avoid fluid contamination, the reservoir cap must remain in place and fully tight, unless you are adding fluid.

Only use fluid that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 316).

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

See **Brake Fluid Specification** (page 322).

BRAKES – TROUBLESHOOTING

BRAKES – WARNING LAMPS



WARNING: Driving your vehicle with the warning lamp on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It may take you longer to stop your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



If the ABS indicator illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock braking system function. See an authorized dealer.

It also momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or begins to flash at any time, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.



The brake indicator momentarily illuminates when you switch the ignition on to confirm the lamp is functional. It may also illuminate when you apply the parking brake and the ignition is on. If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. See an authorized dealer.

Brakes

BRAKES – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Brake fluid level low	The brake fluid level is low, check the brake system immediately. See Checking the Brake Fluid (page 147).
Check brake system	Have the system checked as soon as possible.

BRAKES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Is it normal for my brakes to make noise?

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding, or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake lining could be worn-out. Have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

There is an electrical motor sound when I press on the brake pedal or activate the park brake switch. Is this normal?

Yes, those sounds are the electronic brake booster or the electronic park brake operating.

Note: *Brake dust could accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is normal as the brakes wear and does not contribute to brake noise. See **Cleaning Wheels** (page 293).*

Electric Parking Brake

WHAT IS THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

Electric Parking Brake

The electric parking brake is used to hold your vehicle on slopes and flat roads.

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE



WARNING: Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



WARNING: If you drive extended distances with the parking brake applied, you could cause damage to the brake system.



The switch is on the lower part of the instrument panel.

Pull the electric parking brake switch.

The red warning lamp flashes during operation and illuminates when the parking brake is applied.

Note: You can apply the electric parking brake when the ignition is off.

Note: The electric parking brake could apply when the transmission selector is in park (P). See **Park (P)** (page 132).

APPLYING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IN AN EMERGENCY

You can use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle in an emergency.

Pull and hold the electric parking brake switch.

The electric parking brake continues to slow your vehicle down unless you release the switch.

The red warning lamp illuminates, a tone sounds and the stoplamps turn on when you use the electric parking brake in an emergency.

Note: Do not apply the electric parking brake when your vehicle is moving, except in an emergency. If you repeatedly use the electric parking brake to slow or stop your vehicle, you could cause damage to the brake system.

MANUALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
3. Push the electric parking brake switch.

The red warning lamp turns off.

Pulling Away on a Hill When Towing a Trailer

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
2. Pull and hold the electric parking brake switch.
3. Shift the vehicle into gear.
4. Apply the accelerator pedal until the engine has developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the hill.
5. Release the switch and pull away in a normal manner.

AUTOMATICALLY RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE

Note: If the driver door is removed, buckle the driver seatbelt and proceed to step 2.

Electric Parking Brake

1. Close the driver door.
2. Shift into gear.
3. Press the accelerator pedal and pull away in a normal manner.

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE AUDIBLE WARNING

Sounds when the parking brake is on and your vehicle is moving. If the warning tone continues after you have released the parking brake, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RELEASING THE ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE IF THE VEHICLE BATTERY HAS RUN OUT OF CHARGE



WARNING: The electric parking brake does not operate if the vehicle battery has run out of charge.

Connect a booster battery to the vehicle battery to release the electric parking brake if the vehicle battery has run out of charge. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 245).

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – TROUBLESHOOTING

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – WARNING LAMPS

Brake System



It illuminates red when you apply the parking brake and your vehicle is on. If the lamp flashes when the parking brake has been released, this indicates the parking brake system requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

Electric Parking Brake



When the lamp illuminates yellow, it indicates a malfunction in the electric parking brake. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *Lamps may vary depending on region.*

Electric Parking Brake

ELECTRIC PARKING BRAKE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Park brake malfunction Service now	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park Brake not released	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake not applied	The electric parking brake has not applied. Apply the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake Use switch to release	The electric parking brake has not automatically released. Manually release the electric parking brake.
Park brake press brake and switch to release	You have not pressed the brake pedal. Press the brake pedal to release the parking brake.
Park brake Limited function Service required	The electric parking brake has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Brake maintenance mode	The electric parking brake system has been put into a special mode that is used to allow service of the brakes. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake System overheated	The electric parking brake has overheated. Wait for the electric parking brake to cool down.
Park brake off	The electric parking brake is released.
Release park brake	The electric parking brake has not released. Manually release the electric parking brake. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Park brake on	The electric parking brake is applied.

Hill Start Assist

WHAT IS HILL START ASSIST

Hill Start Assist makes it easier for you to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without using the parking brake.

HOW DOES HILL START ASSIST WORK

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This gives you time to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when you apply the accelerator pedal and the vehicle begins to move forward, or the vehicle is stationary beyond the Hill Start Assist hold time.

The system activates when your vehicle is in any forward gear and facing uphill, or when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and facing downhill.

HILL START ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake.



WARNING: You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system, and intervening if required. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

SWITCHING HILL START ASSIST ON AND OFF

Hill start assist is active when you switch the ignition on. You cannot switch the system on or off.

HILL START ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

HILL START ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Hill Start Assist Not Available	Displays when system is not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Traction Control

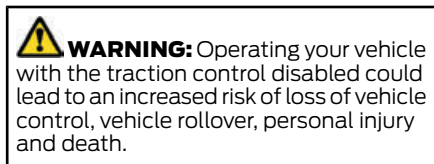
WHAT IS TRACTION CONTROL

The traction control system helps to avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

HOW DOES TRACTION CONTROL WORK

If your wheels begin to spin, the loss of traction can compromise steering control and stability of the vehicle. The traction control system applies the brakes to individual wheels and when needed, reduces engine power at the same time to increase traction.

SWITCHING TRACTION CONTROL ON AND OFF



The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

If your vehicle is stuck in mud or snow, switching traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin.

Switching the System Off



The switch for the stability and traction control system is on the instrument panel.

When you switch the system off, a message and an illuminated icon appear on the instrument cluster.

Use the switch again to return the traction control system to normal operation.

Note: When you switch traction control off, stability control remains fully active.

Note: When you place your vehicle into four-wheel drive low (4L), the traction control disables. Traction control resumes when you put your vehicle back into two-wheel drive or four-wheel drive high (4H).

Note: For additional information on the traction and stability control systems. See **Stability Control** (page 157).

TRACTION CONTROL INDICATOR

Stability and Traction Control Indicator



If the indicator does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.



The traction control off indicator illuminates when you switch the traction control system off, or when an alternative stability control mode is selected that requires the traction control off depending on the drive mode selected.

Traction Control

TRACTION CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRACTION CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Traction control off	The status of the traction control system after you switched it off.
Traction control on	The status of the traction control system after you switched it on.

Stability Control

HOW DOES STABILITY CONTROL WORK



WARNING: Vehicle modifications involving braking system, aftermarket roof racks, suspension, steering system, tire construction and wheel and tire size may change the handling characteristics of your vehicle and may adversely affect the performance of the electronic stability control system. In addition, installing any stereo speakers may interfere with and adversely affect the electronic stability control system. Reducing the effectiveness of the electronic stability control system could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: Remember that even advanced technology cannot defy the laws of physics. It's always possible to lose control of a vehicle due to inappropriate driver input for the conditions. Aggressive driving on any road condition can cause you to lose control of your vehicle increasing the risk of personal injury or property damage. Activation of the electronic stability control system is an indication that at least some of the tires have exceeded their ability to grip the road; this could reduce the operator's ability to control the vehicle potentially resulting in a loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or traction control you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.

The stability control system has several features built into it to help you maintain control of your vehicle:

Electronic Stability Control

Electronic stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent skids or lateral slides by applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually and, if necessary, reducing engine power.

Roll Stability Control

Roll stability control enhances your vehicle's ability to prevent rollovers by detecting your vehicle's roll motion and the rate at which it changes by applying the brakes to one or more wheels individually.

Curve Control

Curve control enhances your vehicle's ability to follow the road when cornering severely or avoiding objects in the roadway. Curve control operates by reducing engine power and, if necessary, applying brakes to one or more of the wheels individually.

Stability Control

Side Wind Stabilization

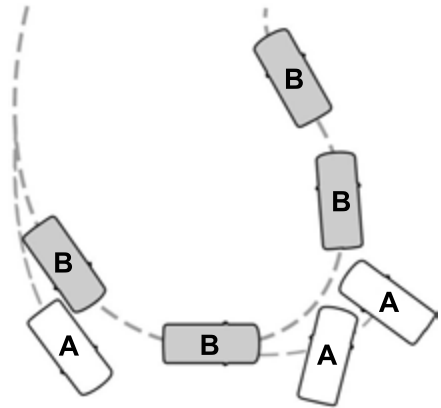
Side wind stabilization is an advanced feature that works by carefully applying the brakes on one side of the vehicle to reduce the effect of a side wind gust on the vehicle's path.

Torque Vectoring by Brakes

Torque vectoring control applies brake torque on the inner driven wheel in a curve for better traction to avoid an understeer, or oversteer situation. Unlike electronic stability control, enhanced torque vectoring control does not slow the vehicle. It helps control excessive wheel slip and gives the vehicle improved cornering agility.

Traction Control

Traction control enhances your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels by detecting and controlling wheel spin. See **What Is Traction Control** (page 155).



- A Vehicle without stability control skidding off its intended route.
- B Vehicle with stability control maintaining control on a slippery surface.

SWITCHING STABILITY CONTROL ON AND OFF

The system turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

The electronic stability control system is disabled when the transmission selector is in reverse (R).

You can switch the traction control independently. See **Switching Traction Control On and Off** (page 155).

Note: When you place your vehicle into four-wheel drive low (4L), the stability control disables. Stability control resumes when you put your vehicle back into two-wheel drive or four-wheel drive high (4H).

Stability Control

ESC Features				
Button Functions	Mode	Stability Control Off Light	Electronic Stability Control	Traction Control Systems
Default at start-up	Default - Traction Control On and Normal Advancetrac	On during bulb check	Enabled	Enabled
Button momentarily pressed - single press	Traction Control Off	On	Enabled	Disabled
Button pressed and held for five seconds	AdvanceTrac Off	On	Disabled	Disabled
Button pressed when Traction Control Off or Advance Trac Off	Return to Default	Off	Enabled	Enabled

Note: Do not use the AdvanceTrac Off setting on public roadways.

If a fault occurs in either the stability control or the traction control system, you may experience the following conditions:

- The stability and traction control light illuminates steadily.
- The stability control and traction control systems do not enhance your vehicle's ability to maintain traction of the wheels.

If a driving condition activates either the stability control or the traction control system you may experience the following conditions

- The stability and traction control light flashes.
- Your vehicle slows down.
- Reduced engine power.
- A vibration in the brake pedal.

- The brake pedal is stiffer than usual.
- If the driving condition is severe and your foot is not on the brake, the brake pedal may move as the system applies higher brake force.

STABILITY CONTROL INDICATOR



If it does not illuminate when you switch the power on, or remains on, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Trail Control

WHAT IS TRAIL CONTROL



WARNING: The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Trail control lets you focus on steering during low-speed and off-road use by controlling your vehicle's acceleration and braking to maintain the speed that you set.

You may hear a noise from the anti-lock brake system pump motor when you use the system. This is normal.

TRAIL CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Trail control is unavailable when any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle speed is greater than 32 km/h in two-wheel drive high (2H) or four-wheel drive high (4H) modes.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 15 km/h in four-wheel drive low (4L) mode.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 8 km/h in reverse (R).
- The transmission is in park (P).
- The driver side door is open or your seatbelt is off when the driver side door is removed.
- Cruise control is on.
- Pro trailer backup assist is on.

SWITCHING TRAIL CONTROL ON AND OFF

[Bronco Off-Road Features](#)

Press the button on the center console.



Note: If your vehicle is equipped with trail one pedal drive, this will activate trail one pedal drive if you are in four wheel drive high (4H) or four wheel drive low (4L) mode, until you set a speed for trail control.

The system switches off if you press the button again or exceed 64 km/h.

SETTING THE TRAIL CONTROL SPEED

Note: The buttons are on the steering wheel.

Drive to the speed you prefer.

SET+ Press the button to set or increase the set speed. Press and hold to adjust the speed in larger increments.

SET- Press the button to set or decrease the set speed. Press and hold to adjust the speed in larger increments.

Note: The indicator changes color.

Trail Control

You can also adjust the set speed by braking, then pressing the + or - button.

Note: *Pressing the brake pedal does not switch off the system.*

CANCELING THE SET SPEED



Press the button on the steering wheel to cancel the set speed.

Note: *If your vehicle has trail one pedal drive and you are in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L) mode, cancelling the set speed activates this feature.*

TRAIL CONTROL INDICATORS



TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE

WHAT IS TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE

Trail one pedal drive allows you to accelerate and brake using only the accelerator pedal. The system assists when driving through difficult off-road terrain. Pressing the accelerator pedal down accelerates your vehicle and releasing pressure on the accelerator pedal, with your foot still on the pedal, slows your vehicle down. Releasing the accelerator pedal may allow your vehicle to come to a complete stop, some situations may require you to press the brake pedal to come to a complete stop.

TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: This system is an extra driving aid. It does not replace your attention and judgment, or the need to apply the brakes. This system does NOT automatically brake your vehicle. If you fail to press the brake pedal when necessary, you may collide with another vehicle.

Shifting into drive (D) or reverse (R) does not cause the vehicle to move.

You can press the brake pedal to increase braking. This does not turn the system off.

Trail one pedal drive could apply the parking brake when your vehicle is not moving and not in park (P).

Note: *Always check the transmission selection before accelerating.*

Note: *Only use trail one pedal drive on slippery or loose surfaces. Using trail one pedal drive on dry, hard surfaces could produce some vibration, driveline bind up and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear.*

TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE LIMITATIONS

Trail one pedal drive is unavailable when any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is not in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L) modes.
- Using cruise control.
- Using trail control.
- You exceed 48 km/h.

Trail Control

Releasing the accelerator pedal may allow your vehicle to come to a complete stop, some situations may require you to press the brake pedal to come to a complete stop.

SWITCHING TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE ON AND OFF

Bronco Off-Road Features



Switching Trail One Pedal Drive On

Press the trail features button when in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L) to activate trail one pedal drive.

Switching Trail One Pedal Drive Off

Press the trail features button again to switch trail one pedal drive off.

Selecting a driveline mode other than four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L) switches trail one pedal drive off.

If you exceed 68 km/h trail one pedal drive switches off.


SET+ Pressing either button when trail one pedal drive is active turns trail control on and places trail one pedal drive into standby mode.

SET-

Switching from Trail Control to Trail One Pedal Drive

CAN When using trail control in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L) modes, you can switch to trail one pedal drive by pressing the button on the steering wheel.

TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE INDICATORS

 When trail one pedal drive is active, the indicator displays green in the instrument cluster. When the system is switched on but is unavailable or in standby mode, it displays grey.

Trail Control

TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE – TROUBLESHOOTING (IF EQUIPPED)

TRAIL ONE PEDAL DRIVE – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Trail 1-Pedal Drive active Use SET button for Trail Control	Displays when trail one pedal drive is active, use the SET+ or SET- to switch to trail control.
Trail Control with Trail 1-Pedal Drive off	Displays when you switch trail one pedal drive off.
Trail Control enabled Use SET button to set speed Trail 1-Pedal Drive available in 4H or 4L	Trail control is in a driveline state not supported for trail one pedal drive. Set a speed to activate trail control or change the driveline state to four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L) modes to active trail one pedal drive.
Trail Control Active Use CANCEL button to resume Trail 1-Pedal Drive	Displays when trail control is active and allows you to resume using trail one pedal drive when you press the CANCEL button.

Trail Control

TRAIL CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAIL CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Reduce speed to enter trail control	Displays when you must reduce your vehicle speed to use trail control.
Trail control not available with park brake applied	Displays when you must release the park brake to use trail control.
Trail control not available while Pro Trailer Backup Assist™ active	Displays when you must switch off the trailer backup assist to use trail control.
Trail control enabled Use SET button to set speed	Displays when you successfully enabled trail control and can set a speed with the Set+ or Set- control.
Trail control off Driver resume control	Displays when a system fault has occurred when trail control was active and the driver must resume control.
Trail control off	Displays when the system has turned off.
Trail control malfunction See manual	Displays when a system fault is present. See the trail control section in your Owner's Manual. See your authorized dealer for diagnosis.
Trail control To activate select gear	Displays when you must be in drive (D), neutral (N) or reverse (R) to use trail control.
Trail control not available with cruise control active	Displays when you must switch the cruise control off to use trail control.
Trail control not available with driver door open	Displays when you must close the driver door to use trail control.
Set trail control to 1 mph to aid in getting unstuck in sand	Displays when the system detects you may be stuck in sand and recommends using trail control on to the lowest set speed. Doing this could slowly pull sand under the tires to free the vehicle.
Set trail control to 2 km/h to aid in getting unstuck in sand	
Descent control now active Press trail control switch to exit	Due to some driver action, Trail Control propulsion was turned off but the vehicle will still brake if descending a hill. The driver must press the Trail Control switch to turn the feature OFF, they can then turn it back on.
Trail Control not available with seatbelt off	Displays when you must have the seatbelt on to use trail control.

Trail Turn Assist

WHAT IS TRAIL TURN ASSIST

Trail turn assist can reduce the turning radius of your vehicle by applying the brakes to the inside rear wheel in low-speed, high steering-angle maneuvers.

TRAIL TURN ASSIST PRECAUTIONS

Note: Do not use trail turn assist on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so can produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and may damage drive line, or braking components. Trail turn assist is only intended for slippery, or loose surfaces.

You may hear noise from the anti-lock brake system while trail turn assist is active. This is normal operation.

TRAIL TURN ASSIST LIMITATIONS

You can only use trail turn assist when the system is in four-wheel drive high (4H), or four-wheel drive low (4L) mode.

You cannot use trail turn assist with the rear differential engaged. If the system detects that the rear differential has recently been engaged, it may not activate trail turn assist until it can confirm that the rear differential is disengaged.

If the vehicle's rear differential is engaged when pressing the trail turn assist button, the rear differential will attempt to disengage to allow for trail turn assist operation.

SWITCHING TRAIL TURN ASSIST ON AND OFF

[Bronco Off-Road Features](#)

While in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L), press the trail turn assist button to turn the feature on. trail turn assist will be on at this time but will not activate until:

- Vehicle speed is less than 19.3 km/h.
- Rear differential is fully unlocked.
- Steering wheel is almost fully turned to the left or right.

You can turn off trail turn assist by doing any of the following:

- Pressing the trail turn assist button again.
- Selecting a two-wheel drive high (2H), or four-wheel drive auto (4A).
- Turning on the rear locking differential.

TRAIL TURN ASSIST INDICATORS



When trail turn assist is on, one of these two indicators will be displayed, depending on the direction of the vehicle's last turn. When the feature is on but not in use, the indicator light will be gray. When the feature is active the indicator light will be green.

Trail Turn Assist

TRAIL TURN ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

TRAIL TURN ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trail Turn Assist available in 4L or 4H	Switch to four-wheel drive low (4L) or four-wheel drive high (4H) to activate trail turn assist. See Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode (page 137).
Trail Turn Assist not available See manual	Trail turn assist system malfunction could be present. If this condition persists, have your vehicle serviced.
Trail Turn Assist on	You have activated trail turn assist.
Trail Turn Assist off	You have switched trail turn assist off.

TRAIL TURN ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does Trail Turn Assist not activate after unlocking the rear differential?

The rear differential may not be fully disengaged. When possible, turn off the rear axle locker while driving straight before using trail turn assist. If you are already in a tight turn when you encounter this situation, driving the vehicle for a short distance in reverse could allow the differential to fully disengage.

Stabilizer Bar Disconnect (If Equipped)

WHAT IS THE STABILIZER BAR DISCONNECT

Stabilizer bar disconnect is a feature that allows the front stabilizer bar to be disconnected for off-road use. This allows for increased front wheel articulation to improve capability and comfort on off-road terrain.

STABILIZER BAR DISCONNECT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If the stabilizer bar disconnect warning lamp illuminates red, a fault could be detected and the stabilizer bar could not be connected. Do not drive your vehicle above 32 km/h and have the system checked as soon as possible. Driving your vehicle above 32 km/h could reduce vehicle stability.



WARNING: Do not get under a vehicle that is switched on as the stabilizer bar disconnect could activate and the vehicle could unexpectedly drop. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

If an amber warning message appears in the cluster indicating that the system requires service, the stabilizer bar disconnect will not be available. Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

SWITCHING THE STABILIZER BAR DISCONNECT ON AND OFF

[Bronco 4x4 Systems](#)

Switching the Stabilizer Bar Disconnect On



A Stabilizer bar disconnect switch.



Switch the system on by pressing the button on the instrument panel. The stabilizer bar disconnects when the vehicle speed is below 32 km/h. An amber indicator illuminates to show that the stabilizer bar disconnected.

When the vehicle speed exceeds 32 km/h, the stabilizer bar reconnects and a gray indicator illuminates, indicating the system is in standby mode. The stabilizer bar disconnects again once the vehicle speed is below 32 km/h.

If the vehicle speed is above 32 km/h and the system is on, the request is stored and a gray indicator illuminates to indicate the system is in standby mode. When the vehicle speed falls below 32 km/h, the stabilizer bar disconnects and the amber indicator illuminates, indicating the stabilizer bar has disconnected.

Note: *The gray indicator stays on until either the vehicle speed reduces and the stabilizer bar disconnects, or the system turns off.*

The stabilizer bar system also turns on and disconnects when you select the Rock Crawl drive mode. See **Selecting a G.O.A.T. Mode** (page 191).

Stabilizer Bar Disconnect (If Equipped)

Note: The stabilizer bar disconnect is not available in certain drive modes. See **Selecting a G.O.A.T. Mode** (page 191).

Note: The stabilizer bar disconnect could be delayed during wheel slippage, dynamic maneuvers, dynamic cornering or when there is an anti-lock brake system or electronic stability control event in progress.

Switching the Stabilizer Bar Disconnect Off

Switch the system off by pressing the stabilizer bar disconnect button, which reconnects the stabilizer bar if currently disconnected.

The stabilizer bar disconnect system also turns off when any of the following occur:

- The engine is switched off.
- You switch out of four-wheel drive low (4L) or four-wheel drive high (4H).
- You select a drive mode that does not allow the stabilizer bar to disconnect.

Note: The stabilizer bar can be reconnected at any time. It is not necessary for the vehicle to be on a level surface as the stabilizer bar self-aligns.

STABILIZER BAR DISCONNECT INDICATORS



An indicator illuminates when you switch the stabilizer bar disconnect system on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

Amber indicates that the stabilizer bar is disconnected.

Grey indicates that the stabilizer bar is connected and in standby.

Red indicates that there is a fault with the system, have the system checked as soon as possible.

STABILIZER BAR DISCONNECT – TROUBLESHOOTING

STABILIZER BAR DISCONNECT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Sta-Bar disconnect not available in selected drive mode	The selected drive mode does not allow you to turn on the stabilizer bar disconnect feature. See G.O.A.T. Mode Control (page 191).
Sta-Bar disconnected Sta-Bar reconnects over 20 MPH	The stabilizer bar has been disconnected.
Sta-Bar disconnected Sta-Bar reconnects over 32 km/h	
Sta-Bar disconnect available below 20 mph	The stabilizer bar disconnect is available below 32 km/h.
Sta-Bar disconnect available below 32 km/h	
Sta-Bar disconnect available in 4L or 4H	The selected 4WD mode does not allow you to turn on the stabilizer bar disconnect feature.

Stabilizer Bar Disconnect (If Equipped)

Message	Action
Sta-Bar disconnect not available See manual	Stabilizer bar disconnect is not available. See Stabilizer Bar Disconnect – Frequently Asked Questions (page 169).
Sta-Bar disconnect Drive below 32 km/h Service now	Stabilizer bar disconnect fault detected, drive below 32 km/h.
Sta-Bar disconnect Drive below 20 MPH Service now	Have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Why is the stabilizer bar disconnect not disconnecting?

The vehicle's battery charge is low and needs to be changed or charged.

Why is the stabilizer bar disconnect not disconnecting?

There is a fault active in another system on the vehicle, have the system checked as soon as possible.

Why is the stabilizer bar disconnect not disconnecting?

The vehicle is in a drive mode that does not allow the stabilizer bar to disconnect and needs to be switched to a different drive mode.

STABILIZER BAR DISCONNECT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is the stabilizer bar disconnect not disconnecting?

The engine is turned off and needs to be turned on.

Why is the stabilizer bar disconnect not disconnecting?

The vehicle is not in four-wheel drive low (4L) or four-wheel drive high (4H), and needs to be switched to either mode.

Why is the stabilizer bar disconnect not disconnecting?

Vehicle speed is above 32 km/h and needs to be reduced in order for the stabilizer bar to disconnect.

Why is the stabilizer bar disconnect not disconnecting?

The vehicle is on a very significant lateral incline, and needs to be moved to more level ground.

Steering

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING

HOW DOES ELECTRIC POWER STEERING WORK

The electric power steering system assists the brake system to help operate advanced stability control and accident avoidance systems.

If your vehicle loses electrical power or detects a concern when you are driving the system switches off and you retain normal steering function. Additionally, whenever the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, you must drive your vehicle a short distance before the system relearns the strategy and reactivates all systems.

ELECTRIC POWER STEERING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the vehicle off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the vehicle on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



WARNING: If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Adapt your speed and driving behavior according to reduced steering assist.

Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and damage to the steering system. If this occurs, you will not lose the ability to steer your vehicle manually nor will it cause damage to the system. Normal steering and driving allows the system to cool down and steering assist returns to normal.

Note: *There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

STEERING – TROUBLESHOOTING

STEERING – WARNING INDICATORS



The electric power steering system indicator illuminates if the system detects a fault during the continuous diagnostic checks.

Note: *If a red warning message displays, stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.*

Steering

STEERING – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Steering malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	The power steering system has detected a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Steering Lock Malfunction Service Now	The steering system has detected a condition that could prevent you from starting your vehicle. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Steering

STEERING – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does it seem that the steering is wandering or pulling?

Check your vehicle for an improperly inflated or uneven tire, loose or worn suspension or steering components, or improper vehicle alignment.

The system is functioning properly and the components have been checked, why is the steering system continuing to pull or wander?

A high crown in the road or crosswinds could make the steering system feel like it is wandering or pulling.

Parking Aids

PARKING AID PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



WARNING: The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



WARNING: Traffic control systems, fluorescent lamps, inclement weather, air brakes, external motors and fans may affect the correct operation of the sensing system. This may cause reduced performance or false alerts.



WARNING: The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.



WARNING: The parking aid system can only assist you to detect objects when your vehicle is moving at parking speeds. To help avoid personal injury you must take care when using the parking aid system.



WARNING: The system may not function if the sensor is blocked.



WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.



WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If your vehicle sustains damage leaving the sensors misaligned, this will cause inaccurate measurements or false alerts.

When you connect a trailer to your vehicle, the rear parking aid detects the trailer and provides an alert. Disable the parking aid when you connect a trailer to prevent the alert.

Note: Connected trailers might be detected by the vehicle and parking aid turns off automatically in those instances.

Note: Certain add-on devices installed around the bumper or fascia may create false alerts, for example, large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks, license plate brackets, bumper covers or any other device that could block the normal detection zone of the parking aid system. Aftermarket spare tires or spare tire covers mounted to the rear tailgate could cause false alerts from the park aid system. Remove the add-on device to prevent false alerts.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. If the sensors are covered, the system's accuracy can be affected.

Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.

Note: When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the parking aids off. See MyKey™ (page 52).

SWITCHING PARKING AID ON AND OFF



Press the parking aid button to switch the system on and off.

Switching Parking Aid On and Off Long-Term

The system can be set to stay disabled in between ignition cycles.

Parking Aids

1. Press Settings on the touchscreen.
2. Press Driver Assistance.
3. Press Park Aid Sensors.
4. Switch Front Sensors (Always) or Rear Sensors (Always) on or off.

REAR PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE REAR PARKING AID

Rear parking sensors detect objects behind your vehicle when in reverse (R).

REAR PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

There is a decreased coverage area at the outer corners.

When using a programmed MyKey, you cannot switch the rear parking aid off.

The rear parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in reverse (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The sensor coverage area is up to 180 cm from the rear bumper.

The rear parking aid detects large objects when you shift into reverse (R) and any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is stationary but an object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a low speed.
- Your vehicle is moving backward at a low speed and an object is moving towards your vehicle, for example another vehicle at a low speed.

The system shall provide no audible warning for the object behind the vehicle when in neutral (N) gear.

LOCATING THE REAR PARKING AID SENSORS



The rear parking aid sensors are in the rear bumper.

REAR PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when your vehicle approaches an object. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases. The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm or less from the rear bumper.

If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. If your vehicle moves backward the tone sounds again.

Note: *When the parking aid system sounds a tone, the audio system could reduce the set volume.*

FRONT PARKING AID

WHAT IS THE FRONT PARKING AID

Front parking sensors detect objects in front of your vehicle.

Parking Aids

FRONT PARKING AID LIMITATIONS

The front parking aid sensors are active when your vehicle is in any position other than park (P) and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The sensor coverage area is up to 70 cm from the bumper.

If your vehicle is in reverse (R), the front parking aid detects objects when your vehicle is moving at a low speed or an object is moving toward your vehicle and provides an audible warning, for example another vehicle at a low speed. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the audible warning turns off. Visual indication is always active in reverse (R).

If your vehicle is in any forward gear, the front parking aid provides audible warnings and visual indication when your vehicle is moving at a speed of 8 km/h or below and the system detects an object within the detection zone. If your vehicle remains stationary for a few seconds, the visual indication and audible warning turns off.

If your vehicle is in neutral (N), the front and rear sensors provide visual indication only when your vehicle is moving below a speed of 8 km/h and obstacles are detected inside the detection areas. Once your vehicle stops, the visual indication and audible warning stops after a few seconds.

LOCATING THE FRONT PARKING AID SENSORS



The front parking aid sensors are in the front bumper.

FRONT PARKING AID AUDIBLE WARNINGS

A warning tone sounds when there is an object within 70 cm from the front bumper. As your vehicle moves closer to an object, the rate of the tone increases.

The warning tone continuously sounds when an object is 30 cm or less from the front bumper.

Note: *If the detected object is 30 cm or less from your vehicle, visual indication remains on.*

Parking Aids

PARKING AID INDICATORS



The system provides object distance indication through the information display.

- As the distance to the object decreases, the indicator blocks illuminate and move toward the vehicle icon.
- If there is no object detected, the distance indicator blocks are gray.

Visual indication remains on when the transmission is in reverse (R). When you stop your vehicle, visual indication turns off after four seconds.

If the system is not available, the side distance indicator blocks do not display.

PARKING AIDS – TROUBLESHOOTING

PARKING AIDS – INFORMATION MESSAGES

If a fault is present in the parking aids, a warning message appears in the instrument cluster or the touchscreen.

Note: *When the front or rear park aid presents a fault message, the side parking aid also disables.*

Message	Action
Check front Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check rear Park Pilot	The system detects a condition that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.
Rear Park Pilot On Off	Displays the park aid status.

Rear View Camera

WHAT IS THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

The rear view camera provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle when the transmission is in reverse (R).

REAR VIEW CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Reverse your vehicle slowly. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the tailgate is ajar. If the tailgate is ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the tailgate is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

Note: When towing, the camera only sees what you are towing. This might not provide adequate coverage and you might not see some objects. In some vehicles, the guide lines may disappear when you connect the trailer tow connector.

LOCATING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA

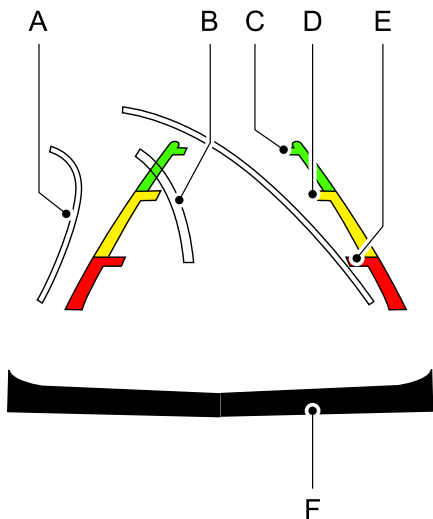
The rear view camera is in the spare tire carrier.

REAR VIEW CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: Active guide lines and fixed guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: The centerline is only available if the active or fixed guide lines are on.

Rear View Camera



- A. Active guide lines.
- B. Centerline.
- C. Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D. Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E. Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F. Rear bumper.

Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. To use active guide lines, turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

Use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

REAR VIEW CAMERA OBJECT DISTANCE INDICATORS

The system provides an image of your vehicle and the sensor zones. The zones highlight green, yellow, and red when the parking aid sensors detect an object in the coverage area.

REAR VIEW CAMERA SETTINGS

ZOOMING THE REAR VIEW CAMERA IN AND OUT



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Selectable settings for this feature are zoom in (+) and zoom out (-). Press the symbol on the camera screen to change the view. The default setting is zoom off.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoomed image keeps the bumper in the image to provide a reference. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: Only the centerline shows when you enable manual zoom.

Rear View Camera

SWITCHING REAR VIEW CAMERA DELAY ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Rear View Camera**.
4. Switch **Rear View Camera Delay** on or off.

When shifting the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear other than park (P), the camera image remains in the display until:

- Your vehicle speed reaches approximately 8 km/h.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

360 Degree Camera

WHAT IS THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA

The 360 degree camera system provides visibility around your vehicle in parking maneuvers such as:

- Centering in a parking space.
- Obstacles near your vehicle.
- Parallel parking.

The 360 degree camera system consists of front, side and rear cameras.

HOW DOES THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA WORK

The 360 degree camera system:

- Allows you to see what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.
- Helps you when parallel parking and centering in a parking space.
- Provides a cross traffic view in front of and behind your vehicle.
- Allows you to see a top-down view of the area outside your vehicle, including the blind spots and obstacles near your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The 360 degree camera system still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with looking out of the windows, and checking the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.



WARNING: Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.



WARNING: Do not switch the camera features on or off when your vehicle is moving.



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Use caution when the tailgate is ajar. If the tailgate is ajar, the camera is out of position and the video image could be incorrect. All guide lines disappear when the tailgate is ajar. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

360 DEGREE CAMERA LIMITATIONS

Note: Use caution if a door is ajar. The 360 degree camera could be out of position and the image could be incorrect.

360 Degree Camera

LOCATING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERAS

Rear View Camera

The rear view camera is in the spare tire carrier. It provides an image of the area behind your vehicle.

Front View Camera

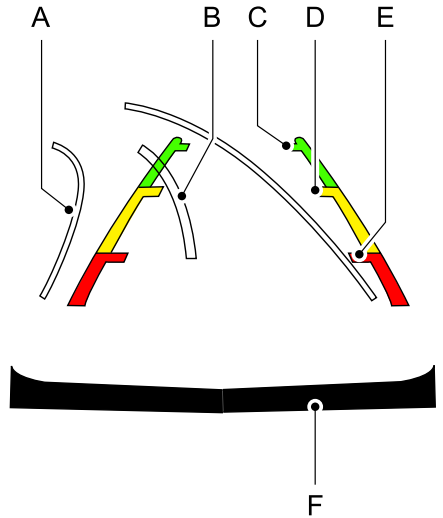
The front video camera is in the grille. It provides a video image of the area in front of your vehicle.

Side View Camera

The side view cameras are on the outside mirrors. They provide a video image of the area on the sides of your vehicle to aid you when parking.

360 DEGREE CAMERA GUIDE LINES

Note: *Active guide lines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).*



- A Active guide lines.
- B Centerline.
- C Fixed guide line: Green zone.
- D Fixed guide line: Yellow zone.
- E Fixed guide line: Red zone.
- F Rear bumper.

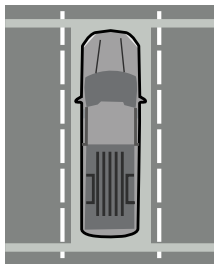
Active guide lines only show with fixed guide lines. Turn the steering wheel to point the guide lines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position changes when reversing, your vehicle could deviate from the intended path.

The fixed and active guide lines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines do not display when the steering wheel position is straight.

360 Degree Camera

Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects get closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the side view mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Keep Out Zone



The keep out zone is represented by the yellow dotted lines running parallel to your vehicle.

360 DEGREE CAMERA SETTINGS

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA ON AND OFF



The 360 degree camera system button is on the instrument panel and allows you to toggle the front camera on or off. The front and rear cameras have multiple screens which consist of:

- Normal view.
- Normal view with 360.
- Split view.

Note: *The rear view camera activates when you switch into reverse (R). Additional views are then accessible on the touchscreen.*

When in park (P), neutral (N) or drive (D), only the front images display when you press the button. When in reverse (R), only the rear images display when you press the button.

Note: *The 360 degree camera system turns off when your vehicle is in motion at low speed, except when in reverse (R).*

SWITCHING THE 360 DEGREE CAMERA VIEW



Press to access the different camera views.



Normal + 360 view: Contains the normal camera view next to a 360 degree camera view.



Normal view: Provides an image of what is directly in front of or behind your vehicle.



Split view: Provides an extended view of what is in front of or behind your vehicle.



Zooms in on the image.


Adaptive Cruise Control


HOW DOES ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL WORK


Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive cruise control uses a radar sensor to adjust your vehicle speed to maintain a set gap between you and the vehicle in front of you in the same lane.


ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** Pay close attention to changing road conditions such as entering or leaving a highway, on roads with intersections or roundabouts, roads without visible lanes of travel, roads that are winding, slippery, unpaved, or steep slopes.


 **WARNING:** The system does not control speed in low traction conditions or extremely steep slopes. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 **WARNING:** The system is not a crash warning or avoidance system.


 **WARNING:** Do not use the system when towing a trailer that has aftermarket electronic trailer brake controls. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended because this can affect the normal operation of the system. Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control, which could result in serious injury.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system with a snow plow blade installed.

 **WARNING:** Do not use the system in poor visibility, for example fog, heavy rain, spray or snow.

When Following a Vehicle

 **WARNING:** When following a vehicle that is braking, your vehicle does not always decelerate quickly enough to avoid a crash without driver intervention. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Hilly Condition Usage

You should select a lower gear when the system is active in situations such as prolonged downhill driving on steep slopes, for example in mountainous areas. The system needs additional engine braking in these situations to reduce the load on the vehicle's regular brake system to prevent it from overheating.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: An audible alarm sounds and the system shuts down if it applies brakes for an extended period of time. This allows the brakes to cool. The system functions normally again after the brakes cool.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL LIMITATIONS

Sensor Limitations

WARNING: On rare occasions, detection issues can occur due to the road infrastructures, for example bridges, tunnels and safety barriers. In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required.

WARNING: If the system malfunctions, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system only warns of vehicles detected by the radar sensor. In some cases there may be no warning or a delayed warning. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

WARNING: The system may not detect stationary or slow moving vehicles below 10 km/h.

WARNING: The system does not detect pedestrians or objects in the road.

WARNING: The system does not detect oncoming vehicles in the same lane.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

WARNING: The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.



The camera is mounted on the windshield behind the interior mirror.



The radar sensor is in the lower grille.

Note: You cannot see the sensor. It is behind a fascia panel.

Adaptive Cruise Control

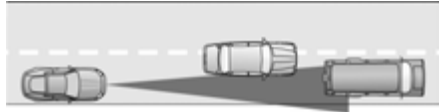
Note: *Keep the front of your vehicle free of dirt, metal badges or objects. Vehicle front protectors, aftermarket lights, additional paint or plastic coatings could also degrade sensor performance.*

A message displays if something obstructs the camera or the sensor. When something blocks the sensor, the system cannot detect a vehicle ahead and does not function. See **Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages** (page 189).

The radar sensor has a limited field of view. It may not detect vehicles at all or detect a vehicle later than expected in some situations. The lead vehicle image does not illuminate if the system does not detect a vehicle in front of you.

Detection issues can occur:

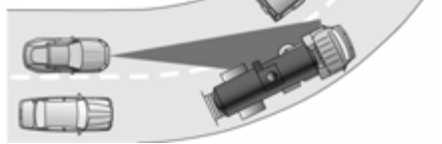
A



B



C



- A When driving on a different line than the vehicle in front.
- B With vehicles that edge into your lane. The system can only detect these vehicles once they move fully into your lane.
- C There may be issues with the detection of vehicles in front when driving into and coming out of a bend or curve in the road.

In these cases, the system may brake late or unexpectedly.

If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs, the radar-sensing zone could change. This could result in a missed or false vehicle detection.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Optimal system performance requires a clear view of the road by the windshield-mounted camera.

Optimal performance may not occur if:

- The camera is blocked.
- There is poor visibility or lighting conditions.
- There are bad weather conditions.

SWITCHING ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL ON AND OFF

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On



Press the button to activate the system. When the system activates, the set speed is equal to the current vehicle speed. If the speed is too low, or other conditions are not correct for adaptive cruise control activation, the system enters standby mode.

Note: The minimum set speed is 15 mph or 20 km/h.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.

Switching Adaptive Cruise Control Off



Press the button when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: When you switch the system off, the set speed clears.

Automatic Cancellation or Deactivation

The system may cancel if:

- The tires lose traction.
- You apply the parking brake.
- Your vehicle speed falls significantly below 15 mph or 20 km/h.

The system may turn off or prevent activating when requested if:

- The vehicle has a blocked sensor.
- The brake temperature is too high.
- There is a failure in the system or a related system.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL SPEED

Drive to the speed you prefer.



Press the button to set the current speed.



Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

The indicator, current gap setting and set speed appear in the instrument cluster display.



Adaptive Cruise Control

A vehicle image illuminates if there is a vehicle detected in front of you.

Note: When adaptive cruise control is active, the speedometer may vary slightly from the set speed displayed in the instrument cluster display.

Manually Changing the Set Speed

SET+ Press and release the button to increase the set speed in small increments.

Press and hold the button to increase the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the displayed set speed is equal to your desired speed.

SET- Press and release the button to decrease the set speed in small increments.


Press and hold the button to decrease the set speed in large increments. Release the button when the displayed set speed is equal to your desired speed.

Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the speed you prefer. Press the button to select the current speed as the set speed.

The system may apply the brakes to slow the vehicle to the new set speed. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

SETTING THE ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL GAP

Note: A minimum vehicle speed of 15 mph or 20 km/h must be met, before you can set the gap.

 Press the button to cycle through the four gap settings.



The selected gap appears in the instrument cluster display as shown by the bars in the image.

Note: The gap setting is time dependent and therefore, the distance adjusts with your vehicle speed.

Note: It is your responsibility to select a gap appropriate to the driving conditions.

Adaptive Cruise Control Gap Settings

Graphic Display, Bars Indicated Between Vehicles	Gap Distance	Dynamic Behavior
1	Closest.	Sport.
2	Close.	Normal.
3	Medium.	Normal.
4	Far.	Comfort.

Each time you switch the system on, it selects the last chosen gap setting.

Following a Vehicle

When a vehicle ahead of you enters the same lane or a slower vehicle is ahead in the same lane, the vehicle speed adjusts to maintain the gap setting.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Note: When you are following a vehicle and you switch on a turn signal lamp, adaptive cruise control may provide a small, temporary acceleration to help you pass.

Your vehicle maintains a consistent gap from the vehicle ahead until:

- The vehicle in front of you accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle in front of you moves out of the lane you are in.
- You set a new gap distance.

The system applies the brakes to slow down your vehicle to maintain a safe gap distance from the vehicle in front of you. The system only applies limited braking. You can override the system by applying the brakes.

Note: The brakes may emit noise when applied by the system.

If the system determines that its maximum braking level is not sufficient, an audible warning sounds, a message appears in the instrument cluster display and an indicator flashes when the system continues to brake. Take immediate action.

CANCELING THE SET SPEED

CAN Press the button or tap the brake pedal.

The set speed does not erase.


RESUMING THE SET SPEED

RES Press the button.

Your vehicle speed returns to the previously set speed and gap setting. The set speed displays continuously in the instrument cluster display when the system is active.

Note: Only use resume if you are aware of the set speed and intend to return to it.

OVERRIDING THE SET SPEED

 **WARNING:** If you override the system by pressing the accelerator pedal, it does not automatically apply the brakes to maintain a gap from any vehicle ahead.


When you press the accelerator pedal, you override the set speed and gap distance.

Use the accelerator pedal to intentionally exceed the set speed limit.

When you override the system, the green indicator illuminates and the vehicle icon does not appear in the instrument cluster display.

The system resumes operation when you release the accelerator pedal. The vehicle speed decreases to the set speed, or a lower speed if following a slower vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL INDICATORS

 Illuminates when you switch adaptive cruise control on. The color of the indicator changes to indicate the system status.

White indicates the system is on but inactive.

Green indicates that you set the speed and the system is active.

Adaptive Cruise Control

SWITCHING FROM ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL TO CRUISE CONTROL



WARNING: Normal cruise control will not brake when your vehicle is approaching slower vehicles. Always be aware of which mode you have selected and apply the brakes when necessary.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Cruise Control**.
4. Press **Normal Cruise Control**.



The cruise control indicator replaces the adaptive cruise control indicator if you select normal cruise control. The gap setting does not display, and the system does not respond to lead vehicles. Automatic braking remains active to maintain set speed. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all messages display or are available.

Note: The system could abbreviate or shorten certain messages depending upon which cluster type you have.

Message	Action
Adaptive cruise malfunction	A malfunction is preventing the adaptive cruise from engaging.
Front sensor not aligned	Contact an authorized dealer to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.
Adaptive cruise not available	Conditions exist preventing the system from being available.
Adaptive cruise not available Sensor blocked See manual	You have a blocked radar because of poor radar visibility due to inclement weather or ice, mud, or water in front of the radar. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve this. Due to the nature of radar technology, it is possible to get a blockage warning with no actual block. This happens, for example, when driving in sparse rural or desert environments. A false blocked condition either self clears, or clears after you restart your vehicle.

Adaptive Cruise Control

Message	Action
Cruise control active Adaptive braking off	You have selected normal cruise control. The system does not brake or react to traffic.
Adaptive cruise Driver resume control	Displays when the adaptive cruise control is going to cancel and you must take control.
Adaptive cruise Speed too low to activate	Displays when the vehicle speed is too slow to activate the adaptive cruise control and there is no lead vehicle in range.

G.O.A.T. Mode Control

WHAT IS G.O.A.T. MODE CONTROL

Your vehicle has several goes over any-type of terrain (G.O.A.T.) modes that you can select for different driving conditions. Depending on the mode that you select, the system adjusts various vehicle settings.

HOW DOES G.O.A.T. MODE CONTROL WORK

Each selectable mode changes various electronic and mechanical settings within your vehicle to tailor its performance and driving characteristics to on-road or off-road driving conditions. The system may alter steering feel and effort, traction control, stability control, chassis controls, powertrain response, transmission shift points, four-wheel driveline setting, exhaust noise level and suspension dampening to predetermined settings, depending upon the mode that you select.

The system reverts to the normal mode each time you start your vehicle. At startup the system also displays a prompt on the instrument cluster display that gives you the option to return to the previously selected drive mode during the last ignition cycle. If you select yes, the system returns to the last selected drive mode and the default driveline settings associated with that mode. If you select no or do not make a selection within a short time, the system remains in normal mode and the driveline settings remain the same as selected in the prior ignition cycle.

Note: Your vehicle has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor all systems for proper operation. If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, your vehicle defaults to normal mode and the driveline remains in the four-wheel drive setting that you last selected prior to the system fault.

SELECTING A G.O.A.T. MODE

[Bronco 4x4 Systems](#)



To select a mode, use the console mounted controller.

Note: Mode changes will not be available when the ignition is off or when the engine is not running.

Note: Button icons may vary.

Note: Do not perform this operation when cruise control or trail control (if equipped) is selected and active. The mode change may not occur as expected.

G.O.A.T. Mode Control

Note: To optimize off-road driving performance, the system disables the brake over accelerator feature when in off-road modes, including mud/ruts, sand, baja and rock crawl modes. A message displays in the instrument cluster when you select an off-road mode. See **G.O.A.T. Mode Control – Information Messages** (page 195). Brake over accelerator enables when an off-road mode is exited or during the next key cycle. Return to on-road modes, normal, eco, sport or slippery, when driving on regular roads. See **Brake Over Accelerator** (page 147).

G.O.A.T. MODES

BAJA



For high speed off-road driving. Baja mode optimizes the throttle control for better response and torque delivery.

Four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive auto (4A) is not selectable in baja mode.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed in all selectable four-wheel drive modes.

The stabilizer bar disconnect is available in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L).

Note: Depending on the four-wheel drive mode selected when using Baja mode on dry/hard pavement, your vehicle could experience vibration, driveline bind up, damage and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear.

ECO



For efficient driving. This mode helps deliver maximum fuel efficiency and helps to increase driving range.

Two-wheel drive high (2H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is not selectable in eco mode.

The front electronic locking differential is not available in eco mode. The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

The stabilizer bar disconnect is not available in eco mode.

MUD/RUTS



For off-road driving. This mode enhances vehicle performance to traverse muddy, rutted or uneven terrains.

Four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is selectable in mud/rut mode.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is engaged when in mud/ruts mode and is available at any speed in all selectable four-wheel drive modes.

The stabilizer bar disconnect is available in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L).

Note: Depending on the four-wheel drive mode you select when using Mud/Ruts mode on dry, hard pavement, your vehicle could experience vibration, driveline bind up, damage and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear.

Note: Automatic disconnect is not available with some vehicle options.

G.O.A.T. Mode Control

NORMAL



For everyday driving. This mode is the perfect balance of excitement, comfort and convenience. This is the default mode after each ignition cycle, the driveline settings remain the same prior to the ignition cycle.

Two-wheel drive high (2H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. All four-wheel drive modes are selectable when in normal mode.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

Note: *The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed when in four-wheel drive low (4L).*

The stabilizer bar disconnect is available in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L).

ROCK CRAWL



For off-road driving and optimum rock-climbing ability. Rock crawl mode optimizes the throttle and transmission response to provide you additional control of your vehicle.

Four-wheel drive low (4L) is the only driveline configuration available in rock crawl, the system prompts you to put your vehicle into four-wheel drive low (4L) upon selection.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is engaged when in rock crawl mode and is available at any speed.

The stabilizer bar disconnects when in rock crawl mode.

Note: *When using rock crawl mode on dry/hard pavement, your vehicle could experience vibration, driveline bind up, damage and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear.*

SAND



For off-road driving on soft, dry sand or deep snow. This mode may help get your vehicle unstuck from deep snow or sand.

Four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is selectable in sand mode.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is engaged when in sand mode and is available at any speed in all selectable four-wheel drive modes.

The stabilizer bar disconnect is available in four-wheel drive high (4H) or four-wheel drive low (4L).

Note: *The front camera system switches on when you are in sand mode and your speed is less than 24 km/h. If you exceed 24 km/h, the camera shuts off until your vehicle speed is below 20 km/h.*

Note: *When using Sand mode on dry/hard pavement, your vehicle could experience vibration, driveline bind up, damage and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear.*

Note: *Sand mode is not intended for use on firm, slippery surfaces, such as paved roads covered with snow or ice. For slippery, firm surfaces use slippery mode.*

G.O.A.T. Mode Control

SLIPPERY - ADVANCED 4X4 WITH 4A MODE



For less than ideal road conditions, you can use this mode for crossing terrain where a firm surface is covered with loose or slippery material, such as snow or ice. Slippery mode lowers throttle response and optimizes shifting for slippery surfaces.

Four-wheel drive auto (4A) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Two-wheel drive high (2H) is not selectable in slippery mode.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

Note: *The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed when in four-wheel drive low (4L).*

The stabilizer bar disconnect is not available in slippery mode.

Note: *Depending on the four-wheel drive mode selected when using slippery mode on dry/hard pavement, your vehicle could experience vibration, driveline bind up, damage and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear.*

SLIPPERY - 4X4 WITH PART TIME ENGAGEMENT



For less than ideal road conditions, you can use this mode for crossing terrain where a firm surface is covered with loose or slippery material, such as snow or ice. Slippery mode lowers throttle response and optimizes shifting for slippery surfaces.

Four-wheel drive high (4H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. All four-wheel drive modes are selectable in slippery mode.

The front electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h when in four-wheel drive low (4L). The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

Note: *The rear electronic locking differential is available at any speed when in four-wheel drive low (4L).*

The stabilizer bar disconnect is not available in slippery mode.

Note: *Depending on the four-wheel drive mode selected when using slippery mode on dry hard pavement, your vehicle could experience vibration, driveline bind up, damage and potential excessive tire and vehicle wear.*

SPORT - ADVANCED 4X4 WITH 4A MODE



For sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases accelerator pedal response and provides a sportier steering feel. The powertrain system holds onto lower gears longer, helping your vehicle accelerate faster.

Four-wheel drive auto (4A) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is not selectable in sport mode.

The front electronic locking differential is not available in sport mode. The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

The stabilizer bar disconnect is not available in sport mode.

G.O.A.T. Mode Control

SPORT - 4X4 WITH PART TIME ENGAGEMENT



For sporty driving with improved performance handling and response. This mode increases accelerator pedal response and provides a sportier steering feel. The powertrain system holds onto lower gears longer, helping your vehicle accelerate faster.

Two-wheel drive high (2H) is the default four-wheel drive mode. Four-wheel drive low (4L) is not selectable in sport mode.

The front electronic locking differential is not available in sport mode. The rear electronic locking differential is available below 40 km/h.

The stabilizer bar disconnect is not available in sport mode.

G.O.A.T. MODE CONTROL – TROUBLESHOOTING

G.O.A.T. MODE CONTROL – WARNING LAMPS



Some drive modes reduce traction and stability control performance and the indicator illuminates in the instrument cluster.

G.O.A.T. MODE CONTROL – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Changing to normal drive mode for improved towing performance	Displays when the system switches to normal mode to support towing performance.
Drive mode not available	Displays when you select a drive mode that is not available. Select a different drive mode.
Drive mode preconditions not met	Displays when you select a drive mode that is not available. Check the four-wheel drive mode, electronic locking differential and stabilizer bar before selecting a drive mode.
Drive mode selection reduced due to system malfunction	Displays when you select a drive mode that is not available. Have the system checked.
Off-road use only	Displays when you select an off-road drive mode.

G.O.A.T. Mode Control

Message	Details
Selected 4x4 mode not available in current drive mode	Displays when you select a four-wheel drive mode that is not available in the current drive mode. Select an available four-wheel drive mode.
Selected locking differential not available in current drive mode	Displays when you select an electronic locking differential that is not available in the current drive mode. Select an available electric locking differential.
Sta-Bar disconnect not available in selected drive mode	Displays when you attempt to disconnect the stabilizer bar in the current drive mode. Select a different drive mode to disconnect the stabilizer bar.

G.O.A.T. Mode Control

G.O.A.T. MODE CONTROL – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why did the system default to normal mode?

If a mode is unavailable due to a system fault, normal mode is selected and the driveline settings remain the same as prior to the system fault.

Lane Keeping System

WHAT IS THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM

The lane keeping system alerts you by providing temporary steering assistance or steering wheel vibration when it detects an unintended lane departure.

HOW DOES THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM WORK


The lane keeping system uses a forward looking camera mounted on the windshield to monitor vehicle movement within the travel lane.


When the camera detects a drift out of the travel lane, the lane keeping system alerts the driver by vibrating the steering wheel, or aids the driver by providing a small steering input to move the vehicle back into the travel lane.


The driver can select one of three modes:


- Alert (If Equipped)
- Aid
- Alert + Aid


LANE KEEPING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS


 **WARNING:** You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.


 **WARNING:** The sensor may incorrectly track lane markings as other structures or objects. This can result in a false or missed warning.

 **WARNING:** In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

 **WARNING:** The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

 **WARNING:** If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

 **WARNING:** The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

 **WARNING:** Large contrasts in outside lighting can limit sensor performance.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

The lane keeping system only operates when the vehicle speed is greater than 64 km/h.

The system works when the camera can detect at least one lane marking or the edge of the road.

The lane keeping system may not correctly operate in any of the following conditions:

- The lane keeping system does not detect at least one lane marking.
- You switch the turn signal on.

Lane Keeping System

- You apply direct steering, accelerate fast or brake hard.
- The vehicle speed is less than 64 km/h.
- The anti-lock brake, stability control or traction control system activates.
- The lane is too narrow.
- Something is obscuring the camera or it is unable to detect the lane markings due to environment, traffic or vehicle conditions.

The lane keeping system may not correct lane positioning in any of the following conditions:

- High winds.
- Uneven road surfaces.
- Heavy or uneven loads.
- Incorrect tire pressure.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM ON AND OFF



To activate the lane keeping system, press the button on the steering wheel.

To deactivate the lane keeping system, press the button again.

Note: When switching the system on or off a message appears in the information and entertainment display to show the status.

Note: The system stores the on or off setting until manually changed, unless it detects a MyKey™. If the system detects a MyKey™, it defaults to the last setting for that MyKey™.

Note: If the system detects a MyKey™, pressing the button does not affect the on or off status of the system. You can only change the mode and intensity settings.

SWITCHING THE LANE KEEPING SYSTEM MODE

The lane keeping system has different settings that you can view or adjust using the information display.

The system stores the last known selection for each of these settings. You do not need to readjust your settings each time you switch on the system.

To change the lane keeping system mode, use the touchscreen:

1. Select **Driver assistance**.
2. Select **Lane keeping system**.
3. Select **Mode**.
4. Select a setting.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle. If the system detects a MyKey™, the mode is set to alert.

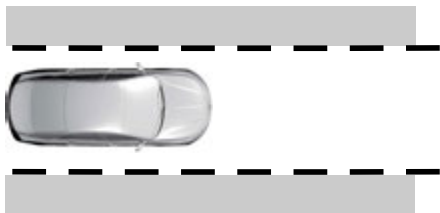
ALERT MODE

WHAT IS ALERT MODE

Alert mode vibrates the steering wheel when it detects an unintended lane departure.

Lane Keeping System

HOW DOES ALERT MODE WORK



When in alert mode, the lane keeping system alerts you by vibrating the steering wheel. The intensity of the vibration is set through the lane keeping system menu.

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL VIBRATION INTENSITY

To change the steering wheel vibration intensity, use the touchscreen:

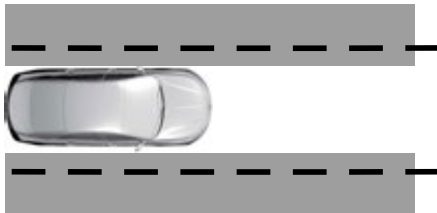
1. Select ***Driver assistance***.
2. Select ***Lane keeping system***.
3. Select ***Intensity***.
4. Select a setting.

AID MODE

WHAT IS AID MODE

Aid mode provides temporary steering assistance toward the center of the lane.

HOW DOES AID MODE WORK



The lane keeping system aids you when an unintentional lane departure occurs. The system provides a small steering input to move the vehicle towards the center of the lane.

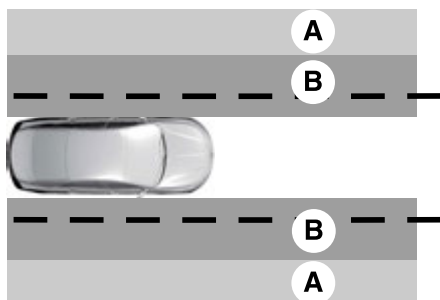
ALERT AND AID MODE

WHAT IS ALERT AND AID MODE

Alert and aid mode uses multiple features to keep you in your lane. The system first provides a small steering input to bring your vehicle back towards the center of the lane. If your vehicle moves too far out of the center of the lane the system alerts you with vibration in the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System

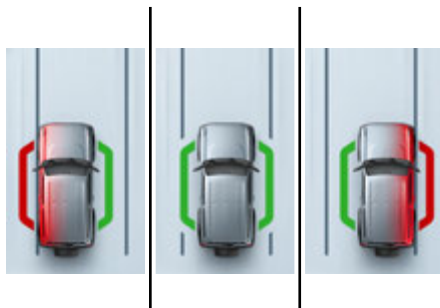
HOW DOES ALERT AND AID MODE WORK



- A Alert.
- B Aid.

The lane keeping system detects a lane departure and provides aid when the vehicles enters **B** and applies the additional alert warning if **A** is entered.

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM INDICATORS



If you switch the lane keeping system on, a graphic with lane markings appears in the information display.

When you switch the system off, the lane marking graphics do not display.

Note: *The overhead vehicle graphic may still display if adaptive cruise control is enabled.*

While the lane keeping system is on, the color of the lane markings change to indicate the system status.

Gray	Green	Yellow	Red
Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is available or ready to provide a warning or intervention on the indicated side.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping aid intervention.	Indicates that the system is providing or has just provided a lane keeping alert warning.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Lane keeping system malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Front camera temporarily not available	The system has detected a condition that has caused the system to be temporarily unavailable.
Front camera Low visibility Clean screen	The system has detected a condition that requires you to clean the windshield in order for it to operate properly.
Front camera malfunction Service required	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Keep hands on steering wheel	The system requests that you keep your hands on the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping System

LANE KEEPING SYSTEM – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why is the feature not available (lane markings are gray) when I can see the lane markings on the road?
Your vehicle speed is less than 65 km/h.
The sun is shining directly into the camera lens.
A quick intentional lane change has occurred.
Your vehicle stays too close to the lane markings for an extended interval of time.
Driving at high speeds in curves.
The last alert warning or aid intervention occurred a short time ago.
Ambiguous lane markings, for example, in construction zones.
Rapid transition from light to dark, or from dark to light.
Sudden offset in lane markings.
ABS or AdvanceTrac™ is active.
There is a camera blockage due to dirt, grime, fog, frost or water on the windshield.
You are driving too close to the vehicle in front of you.
Transitioning between no lane markings to lane markings, or vice versa.
There is standing water on the road.
Faint lane markings, for example, partial yellow lane markings on concrete roads.
Lane width is too narrow or too wide.
You have not calibrated the camera after a windshield replacement.
Driving on tight or on uneven roads.

Lane Keeping System

Why does the vehicle not come back toward the middle of the lane, as expected, in the Aid, or Aid + Alert mode?

High cross winds are present.

There is a large road crown.

Rough roads, grooves or shoulder drop-offs.

Heavy, uneven loading of the vehicle or improper tire inflation pressure.

You changed the tires or modified the suspension.

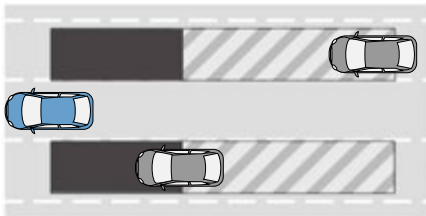
Blind Spot Information System

WHAT IS BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM

Blind spot information system detects vehicles that may have entered the blind spot zone.

HOW DOES BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM WORK

Blind spot information system uses sensors on both sides of your vehicle, detecting rearward from the exterior mirrors to approximately 4 m beyond the rear bumper. The detection area extends to approximately 18 m beyond the rear bumper when the vehicle speed is greater than 48 km/h to alert you of faster approaching vehicles.



BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Do not use the blind spot information system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before changing lanes. The blind spot information system is not a replacement for careful driving.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

Note: *Blind spot information system does not prevent contact with other vehicles. It does not detect parked vehicles, pedestrians, animals or other infrastructure.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Blind spot information system does not operate in park (P) or reverse (R).

The system may not alert you if a vehicle quickly passes through the detection zone.

Note: *For vehicles without blind spot information system with trailer coverage, aftermarket trailer tow modules or tow bars may interfere with the system. In this situation it is recommended that you switch the system off when you attach a trailer. For vehicles with a trailer tow module and tow bar approved by the manufacturer, the system automatically turns off when you attach a trailer.*

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

Blind spot information system turns on when all the following occur:

- You start your vehicle.
- You shift into drive (D).
- The vehicle speed is greater than 10 km/h.

Blind Spot Information System

SWITCHING BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM ON AND OFF

To switch blind spot information system on or off, use the touchscreen:

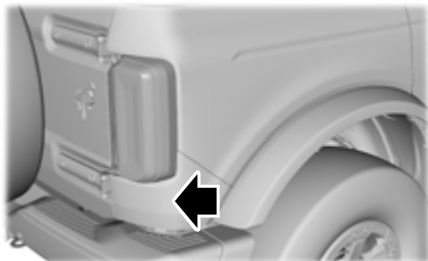
1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Blind Spot Information System**.
4. Switch the feature on or off.

When you switch blind spot information system off, a warning lamp illuminates. When you switch the system on or off, the alert indicators flash twice.

Note: The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

LOCATING THE BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear fascia panel.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.


Note: Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

If the sensors become blocked, a message appears in the instrument cluster display. See **Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages** (page 207). The alert indicators illuminate but the system does not alert you.

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM INDICATORS



 When blind spot information system detects a vehicle, an alert indicator illuminates in the exterior mirror on the side the approaching vehicle is coming from. If you turn the turn signal on for that side of your vehicle, the alert indicator flashes.

Blind Spot Information System

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
BLIS malfunction	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
BLIS not available Sensor blocked See manual	Something is blocking the sensors. Clean the sensors.
BLIS deactivated Trailer attached	The system automatically turns off and displays this message when you connect a trailer to the vehicle that does not have a trailer blind spot system or when you switch the trailer blind spot system off through the touchscreen.

Note: *When connecting a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and turn the system OFF. If the system does not turn OFF automatically, switch the blind spot information system OFF manually. If equipped with blind spot with trailer tow, you will be prompted to set up a trailer that allows the feature to function with that trailer.*

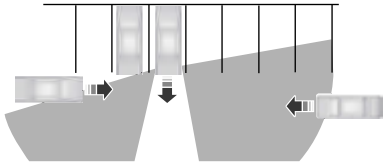
Cross Traffic Alert

WHAT IS CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT

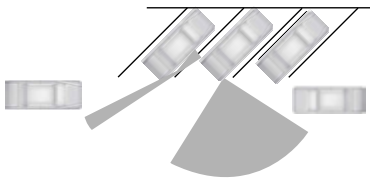
The system alerts you of vehicles approaching from the sides behind your vehicle when you shift into reverse (R).

HOW DOES CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT WORK

Cross traffic alert detects vehicles that approach at a speed between 6–60 km/h. Coverage decreases when the sensors are partially, mostly or fully obstructed.



The sensor on the left-hand side is only partially obstructed and zone coverage on the right-hand side is maximized.



Zone coverage also decreases when parking at narrow angles. The sensor on the left-hand side is mostly obstructed and zone coverage on that side is severely reduced.

Note: *Slowly reversing helps increase the coverage area and effectiveness.*

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not use the cross traffic alert system as a replacement for using the interior and exterior mirrors or looking over your shoulder before reversing out of a parking space. The cross traffic alert system is not a replacement for careful driving.



WARNING: The system may not operate properly during severe weather conditions, for example snow, ice, heavy rain and spray. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT LIMITATIONS

Cross traffic alert may not correctly operate when any of the following occur:

- Something is blocking the sensors.
- Adjacently parked vehicles or objects are obstructing the sensors.
- Vehicles approach at speeds less than 6 km/h or greater than 60 km/h.
- Your vehicle speed is greater than 12 km/h.
- You reverse out of an angled parking space.

SWITCHING CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT ON AND OFF

To switch cross traffic alert on or off use the touchscreen.

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Cross Traffic Alert** on or off.

Cross Traffic Alert

Note: The system switches on every time you switch the ignition on. To permanently switch the system off, contact an authorized dealer.

LOCATING THE CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT SENSORS



The sensors are behind the rear fascia panel.

Note: Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt.

Note: Do not cover the sensors with bumper stickers, repair compound or other objects.

Note: Bike and cargo racks could cause false alerts due to obstruction of the sensor. We recommend switching the feature off when using a bike or cargo rack.

Note: Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy.

If something is blocking the sensors, a message may appear in the information display when you shift into reverse (R).

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT INDICATORS



When the cross traffic alert detects an approaching vehicle, a tone sounds, a warning lamp illuminates in the relevant exterior mirror and arrows appear in the information display to show which side the vehicle is approaching from.

If the system malfunctions, a warning lamp illuminates in the instrument cluster and a message appears in the instrument cluster display. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: If arrows do not display, a message appears in the instrument cluster display.

Note: In some conditions, the system could alert you, even when there is nothing in the detection zone, for example a vehicle passing further away from your vehicle.

Cross Traffic Alert

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

CROSS TRAFFIC ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Cross traffic alert	Displays instead of indication arrows when the system detects a vehicle. Check for approaching traffic.
Cross Traffic not available Sensor blocked See manual	Indicates blocked cross traffic alert system sensors. Clean the sensors. If the message continues to appear, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic system malfunction	The system has malfunctioned. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Cross traffic alert deactivated Trailer attached	Displays if you attach a trailer to your vehicle.

Note: *When connecting a trailer, the system may detect the trailer and turn the system OFF. If the system does not turn OFF automatically, switch the cross traffic alert system OFF manually.*

Pre-Collision Assist

WHAT IS PRE-COLLISION ASSIST

[Pre-Collision Assist with Pedestrian Detection](#)

Pre-collision assist detects and warns of approaching hazards in the roadway. If your vehicle is rapidly approaching another stationary vehicle, a vehicle traveling in the same direction as yours, or a pedestrian within your driving path, the system provides multiple levels of assistance to help avoid a collision.

HOW DOES PRE-COLLISION ASSIST WORK

The system warns the driver of potential hazards by providing three levels of assistance.



If your vehicle is rapidly approaching potential hazards the system provides the following levels of functionality:

1. Alert.
2. Brake Support.
3. Automatic Emergency Braking.



Alert: When active, a flashing visual warning appears and an audible warning tone sounds.

Brake Support: The system is designed to help reduce the impact speed by preparing the brakes for rapid braking. The system does not automatically apply the brakes. If you press the brake pedal, the system could apply additional braking up to maximum braking force, even if you lightly press the brake pedal.

Automatic Emergency Braking:

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent.

Note: *If you perceive the pre-collision assist alerts as being too frequent or disturbing, then you can reduce the alert sensitivity. Setting the low sensitivity would result in fewer and later warnings of a potential forward collision. The manufacturer recommends using the high sensitivity setting where possible.*

Note: *Automatic emergency braking performance is not affected by the sensitivity setting.*

Each system has various levels of detection capabilities. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 212).

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system does not detect vehicles moving in a different direction or animals. Apply the brakes when necessary. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system does not operate during hard acceleration or steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.

Pre-Collision Assist



WARNING: The system may operate with reduced function during cold and inclement weather conditions. Snow, ice, rain, spray and fog can adversely affect the system. Keep the front camera and radar free of snow and ice. Failure to follow this instruction may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



WARNING: Take additional care if your vehicle is heavily loaded or you are towing a trailer. These conditions could result in reduced performance of this system. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The system cannot help prevent all crashes. Do not rely on this system to replace driver judgment and the need to maintain a safe distance and speed.



WARNING: System performance could be reduced in situations where the vehicle camera has limited detection capability. These situations include but are not limited to direct or low sunlight, vehicles at night without tail lights, unconventional vehicle types, and pedestrians and cyclists with complex, partially obscured backgrounds. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Pre-collision assist depends on the detection ability of its camera and sensors. Any obstructions or damage to these areas can limit detection or prevent the system from functioning. See **Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors** (page 213).

The system is active at 5 km/h and above.

Note: *The pre-collision assist system automatically disables when you select four-wheel drive low, manually disable AdvanceTrac™, or select rock crawl mode.*

Note: *Brake support and automatic emergency braking are active up to the maximum speed of the vehicle.*

Pedestrian Detection Limitations

Pedestrian detection is active at speeds up to 80 km/h.

Pedestrian detection operates optimally when detected hazards are clearly identifiable. System performance may reduce in situations where pedestrians are running, partly obscured, have a complex background, or cannot be distinguished from a group.

SWITCHING PRE-COLLISION ASSIST ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch the feature on or off.

Pre-Collision Assist

Adjusting the Pre-Collision Assist Settings

You can adjust the following settings by using the touchscreen controls in the pre-collision assist menu:

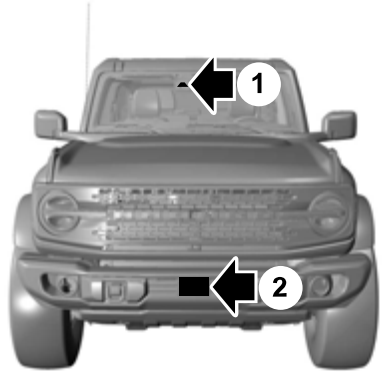
- Change alert and distance alert sensitivity to one of three possible settings.
- Switch distance indication and alert on or off.
- If required, switch automatic emergency braking on or off.
- If required, switch the entire pre-collision assist feature on or off.
- If required, switch evasive steering assist on or off.

Note: Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering turn on every time you switch the ignition on.

Note: If your vehicle has a radar sensor, we recommend that you switch the system off if you install a snow plow or similar object in such a way that it may block the radar sensor. Your vehicle remembers the selected setting across key cycles.

Note: If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist switches off.

LOCATING THE PRE-COLLISION ASSIST SENSORS



- 1 Camera.
- 2 Radar sensor (if equipped).

If a message regarding a blocked sensor or camera appears in the information display, something is obstructing the radar signals or camera images. If your vehicle has a radar sensor, it is behind the fascia cover in the center of the lower grille. With a blocked sensor or camera, the system may not function, or performance may reduce. See **Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages** (page 216).

Note: Proper system operation requires a clear view of the road by the camera. Have any windshield damage in the area of the camera's field of view repaired.

Note: If something hits the front end of your vehicle or damage occurs and your vehicle has a radar sensor, the radar sensing zone could change. This could cause missed or false vehicle detections. Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

Pre-Collision Assist

Note: If your vehicle detects excessive heat at the camera or a potential misalignment condition, a message could display in the information display indicating temporary sensor unavailability. When operational conditions are correct, the message deactivates. For example, when the ambient temperature around the sensor decreases or the sensor recalibrates successfully.

DISTANCE INDICATION

WHAT IS DISTANCE INDICATION

Distance indication displays the gap between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.

Note: The graphic does not display if you switch on cruise control or adaptive cruise control.

Vehicle Speed	System Sensitivity	Distance Indicator Color	Distance Gap	Time Gap
100 km/h.	Normal.	Gray.	Greater than 25 m.	Greater than 0.9 seconds.
		Yellow.	17–25 m.	0.6–0.9 seconds.
		Red.	Less than 17 m.	Less than 0.6 seconds.

Pre-Collision Assist

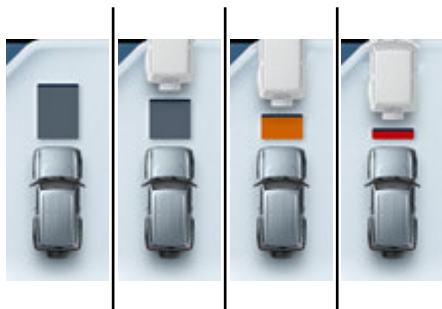
SWITCHING DISTANCE INDICATION ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Distance Indication** on or off.

DISTANCE INDICATION INDICATOR

The indicator displays the time gap between your vehicle and vehicles traveling in the same direction ahead of you.



AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING

Automatic emergency braking may activate if the system determines that a collision is imminent. The system may help reduce impact damage to avoid the crash completely.

Automatic emergency braking is only available up to certain speeds. See **Pre-Collision Assist Limitations** (page 212).

SWITCHING AUTOMATIC EMERGENCY BRAKING ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Press **Auto Emergency Braking**.
5. Switch the feature on or off.

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

WHAT IS EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST

If your vehicle is rapidly approaching a road user, evasive steering assist helps you steer around the road user.

After you turn the steering wheel in an attempt to avoid a crash with the road user, the system applies additional steering torque to help you steer around the road user. After you pass the road user, the system applies steering torque when you turn the steering wheel to steer back into the lane. The system deactivates after you fully pass the road user.

Note: *Road users are defined as another stationary vehicle in the same lane, a vehicle traveling in the same lane in the same direction as yours, a cyclist traveling in the same direction as yours or a pedestrian within your driving path. See **Pre-Collision Assist Precautions** (page 211).*

Pre-Collision Assist

EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST LIMITATIONS

Evasive steering assist only activates when all the following occur:

- Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist are on.
- The system detects a road user ahead and starts to apply the brakes.
- You significantly turn the steering wheel to steer around a road user.

Note: *Evasive steering assist does not automatically steer around a road user. If you do not turn the steering wheel, evasive steering assist does not activate.*

Note: *Evasive steering assist does not activate if the distance to the road user ahead is too small and the system cannot avoid a crash.*

Note: *Evasive steering does not activate with cyclists or pedestrians.*

SWITCHING EVASIVE STEERING ASSIST ON AND OFF

To switch the system on or off, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Press **Pre-Collision Assist**.
4. Switch **Evasive Steering** on or off.

Note: *If you switch automatic emergency braking off, evasive steering assist turns off.*

Note: *Automatic emergency braking and evasive steering assist turn on every time you switch the ignition on.*

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – TROUBLESHOOTING

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – WARNING LAMPS



A telltale illuminates in the cluster to indicate if the system is disabled or unavailable.

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Pre-collision assist not available Sensor blocked	You have a blocked sensor due to bad weather, ice, mud or water in front of the radar sensor. You can typically clean the sensor to resolve.
Pre-collision assist not available	A fault with the system has occurred. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Pre-Collision Assist

PRE-COLLISION ASSIST – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Camera Troubleshooting

The windshield in front of the camera is dirty or obstructed.

Clean the outside of the windshield in front of the camera.

The windshield in front of the camera is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.

Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the camera to detect that there is no obstruction.

Radar Troubleshooting (If Equipped)

The surface of the radar in the grille is dirty or obstructed.

Clean the grille surface in front of the radar or remove the object causing the obstruction.

The surface of the radar in the grille is clean, but the message remains in the instrument cluster display.

Wait a short time. It could take several minutes for the radar to detect that there is no obstruction.

Heavy rain, spray or fog is interfering with the radar signals.

The pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

Swirling water or snow or ice on the surface of the road could interfere with the radar signals.

The pre-collision assist system is temporarily disabled. Pre-collision assist reactivates a short time after the weather conditions improve.

Radar is out of alignment due to a front end impact.

Have your vehicle serviced to have the radar checked for proper coverage and operation.

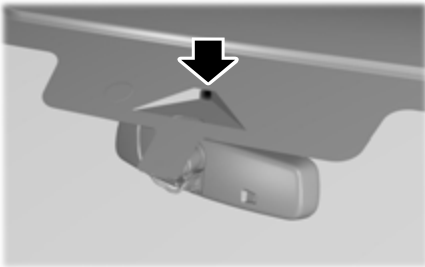
Driver Alert

WHAT IS DRIVER ALERT

Driver alert alerts you if it determines that you are becoming drowsy or if your driving deteriorates.

HOW DOES DRIVER ALERT WORK

Driver Alert calculates your alertness level based on your driving behavior in relation to the lane markings and other factors through use of the front camera sensor behind the interior mirror.



DRIVER ALERT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: You are responsible for controlling your vehicle at all times. The system is designed to be an aid and does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

WARNING: Take regular rest breaks if you feel tired. Do not wait for the system to warn you.

WARNING: Certain driving styles may result in the system warning you even if you are not feeling tired.

WARNING: In cold and severe weather conditions the system may not function. Rain, snow and spray can all limit sensor performance.

WARNING: The system will not operate if the sensor cannot track the road lane markings.

WARNING: If damage occurs in the immediate area surrounding the sensor, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

WARNING: The system may not correctly operate if your vehicle is fitted with a suspension kit not approved by us.

WARNING: The system may not operate properly if the sensor is blocked. Keep the windshield free from obstruction.

Note: If something is blocking the camera or damaged the windshield, Driver Alert may not function.

DRIVER ALERT LIMITATIONS

Driver alert may not function correctly if:

- The sensor cannot track the road lane markings.
- Your vehicle's speed is less than approximately 65 km/h.

Driver Alert

SWITCHING DRIVER ALERT ON AND OFF

To switch driver alert on or off, use the touchscreen:

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Driver Assistance**.
3. Switch **Driver Alert** on or off.

Note: *The system remains on or off depending on the last selection.*

Resetting Driver Alert

You can reset the system by either:

- Switching the ignition off and on.
- Stopping the vehicle and then opening and closing the driver door.

DRIVER ALERT – TROUBLESHOOTING

DRIVER ALERT – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Driver fatigue warning Rest now	Stop and rest as soon as it is safe to do so.
Driver fatigue warning Rest suggested	Take a rest soon.

DRIVER ALERT INDICATORS

System Warnings


The warning system has two stages:


1. A temporary warning is issued to advise you to take a rest. This message only appears for a short time.
2. If you do not rest and the system continues to detect that your driving deteriorates, it issues a further warning. This remains in the instrument cluster display until you cancel it.


Note: *The system does not warn you if the vehicle speed falls below approximately 65 km/h.*


Load Carrying

LOAD CARRYING PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Make sure that you properly secure objects in the luggage compartment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury in the event of a sudden stop or crash.

 **WARNING:** Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.


 **WARNING:** The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.


 **WARNING:** Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle.

Note: *When loading long objects into your vehicle, for example, pipes, timber or furniture, be careful not to damage the interior trim.*

ROOF RACK (IF EQUIPPED)

ROOF RACK PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are fitting a roof rack.

 **WARNING:** When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Note: *If you use a roof rack, the fuel consumption of your vehicle will be higher and you may experience different driving characteristics.*

Note: *Never place loads directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

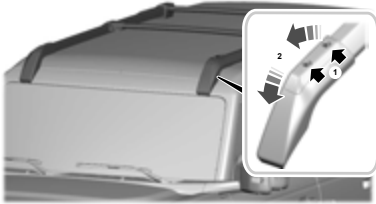
You must place loads directly on the crossbars fitted to the roof rack side rails. When using the roof rack system, we recommend that you use genuine Ford accessory crossbars specifically designed for your vehicle.

Make sure that you securely fasten the load. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Load Carrying

REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE ROOF RACK

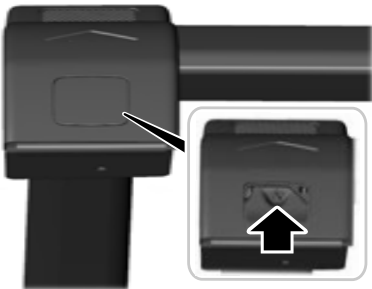
Removing the Roof Rack (if Equipped)



1. Using the provided T30 tool, remove the front roof rack cover fasteners.
2. Remove the front roof rack covers by pulling upward at the rear edge and rotating forward.

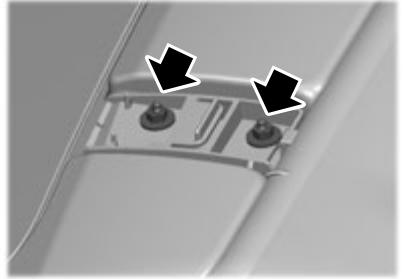


3. Using a 10 mm socket, remove the front roof rack fasteners.



4. Remove the cover to access the rear fastener.

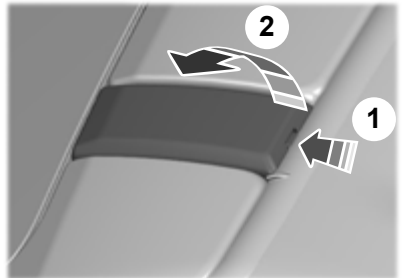
5. Using the supplied special tool, loosen the fastener until you can remove the rack.
6. Remove the rack from the vehicle.



Note: The windshield trim cover, retaining plate and fasteners are provided. The trim cover is installed when you remove the roof rack.

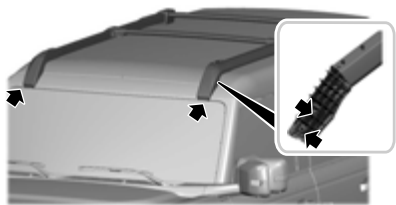
7. Locate the trim cover components.
8. Place the trim cover retaining plate over the mounting studs.
9. Install the supplied fasteners. Torque nuts to 10.5 Nm.
10. Align the cover with the alignment slot at the front of the cover, then rotate rearward and snap into place.

Installing the Roof Rack

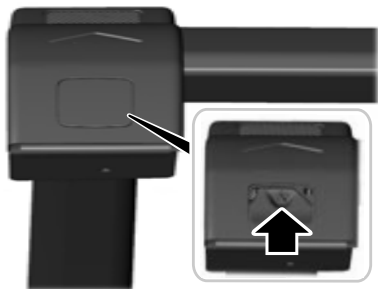


Load Carrying

1. To remove, press the button on the rear of the trim cover and rotate forward.
2. Remove the fasteners and remove the trim cover retaining plate.
3. Store the trim cover components.



4. Position the roof rack on the vehicle.
5. Hand start the front roof rack fasteners.
6. Using a 10 mm socket, tighten the front roof rack fasteners. Torque bolts to 10.5 Nm.
7. Align the cover with the alignment slot and rotate rearward.
8. Hand start the front roof rack cover fasteners.
9. Using the provided T30 tool, tighten the front roof rack cover fasteners. Torque bolts to 8 Nm.



Note: The rear crossbar is part of the clamping system. If you removed the crossbar you must install it first for proper attachment to the hard top.

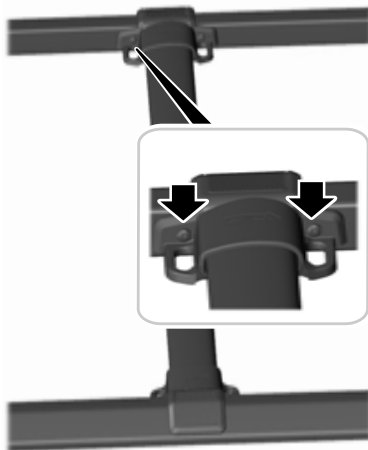
10. Using the supplied special tool, tighten the fastener.

Note: The supplied special tool stops turning the fastener when you have proper torque applied.

11. Install the rear roof rack fastener cover.

ADJUSTING A ROOF RACK CROSSBAR

Adjusting the Crossbar (If Equipped)



1. Using the provided T30 tool, remove the crossbar bolts.
2. Move the crossbar to the new position.
3. Using the provided T30 tool, install the crossbar bolts.

Note: Torque bolts to 8 Nm.

Note: Moving the crossbars forward may increase wind noise. To limit wind noise return the crossbars to the rearward position.

Load Carrying

ROOF RACK LOAD CAPACITIES



WARNING: Do not remove or modify the B-Pillar brace or trim. Doing

so could affect safety system performance, including safety canopy and front seat mounted side airbags, during a crash or rollover.

Do not remove or modify the C-Pillar brace.

Maximum Recommended Load Amounts

Description	Maximum Recommended Load
When in motion	50 kg
When stationary	204 kg
Vehicles with 37x12.50/50R17 Tires	0 kg

Note: *The maximum recommended load is based on the load being evenly distributed on the crossbars.*

Rear Cargo Area

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS

REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: Always properly secure cargo to prevent shifting cargo or cargo falling from the vehicle. Failure to do so could result in compromised vehicle stability and serious personal injury to vehicle occupants or others.

WARNING: The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

WARNING: It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

LOCATING THE REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINTS



REAR CARGO AREA ANCHOR POINT LOAD CAPACITIES

Maximum Load Value
907 kg

Connecting a Trailer

CONNECTING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS

Consult your local motor vehicle laws for towing a trailer.

See the instructions included with towing accessories for the proper installation and adjustment specifications.

Service your vehicle more frequently if you tow a trailer.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions the rental agency gives you.

When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

Account for the trailer coupler weight as part of your vehicle load when calculating the total vehicle weight.

Do not exceed the load limits.

TOW BALL

TOW BALL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed the lowest rating capacity for your vehicle or trailer hitch. Overloading your vehicle or trailer hitch can impair your vehicle stability and handling. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the trailer hitch. Modifying the trailer hitch could reduce the hitch rating.



WARNING: Always place the tow ball arm in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Tow Ball Arm Guidelines

- Replacement keys are available. We recommend that you record the key number on the lock cylinder.
- The tow ball arm mechanism is maintenance free. Do not grease or oil the mechanism.
- Remove the trailer wiring plug from the trailer wiring connection socket when not in use. Failure to do so may result in corrosion of the trailer wiring connection socket. Regularly clean the trailer wiring connection socket and make sure the socket cover is fully closed.
- If you use a high pressure water jet to clean your vehicle, disconnect the trailer wiring plug. Do not aim the water jet directly at the trailer wiring connection socket. We recommend that you detach the tow ball arm before washing your vehicle.

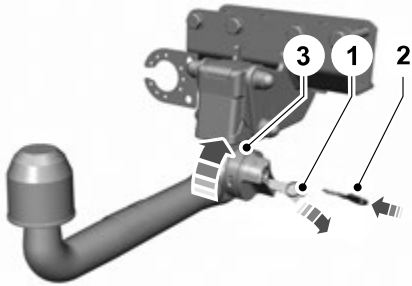
DETACHING THE TOW BALL ARM

You must detach the tow ball arm when not in use. Securely stow the tow ball arm in the luggage compartment.

Never unlock or detach the tow ball arm with a trailer attached.

Do not use any tools to detach the tow ball arm.

Connecting a Trailer



1. Remove the protective cap.
2. Insert the key and turn it counterclockwise to unlock the handwheel.
3. Hold the tow ball arm. Push the handwheel inward and turn it clockwise.

Note: The mark on the handwheel turns from green to red.

4. Release the handwheel.
5. Pull the tow ball arm downward to remove it.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket upward through 90° until it engages in the end position.

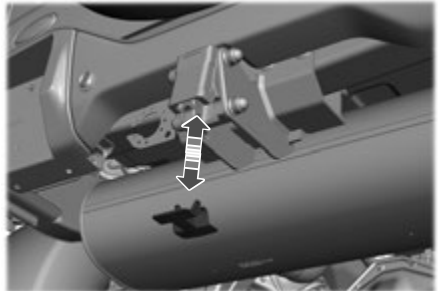


7. Insert the blanking plug.

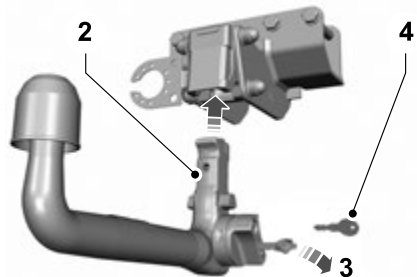
ATTACHING THE TOW BALL ARM

Do not use any tools to attach the tow ball arm.

Note: You can only attach the tow ball arm if it is unlocked, with the mark on the handwheel red. If the mark on the handwheel is amber, push the handwheel in and turn 180° clockwise to unlock.



1. Remove the blanking plug.



2. Fully insert the tow ball arm until it engages. Do not hold the handwheel.

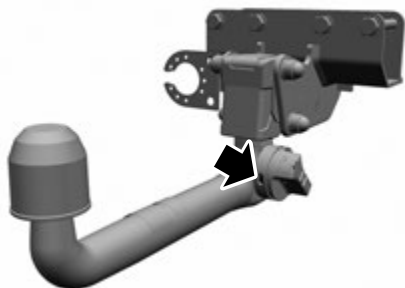
Note: The mark on the handwheel turns from red to green.

3. Remove the protective cap.
4. Insert the key and turn it clockwise to lock the handwheel.

Connecting a Trailer

5. Fit the protective cap. Fully push it back over the lock.
6. Turn the trailer wiring connection socket downward through 90° until it engages in the end position.

Tow Ball Arm Safety Checks



After you attach the tow ball arm, make sure:

- The mark on the handwheel is green.
- You have locked the handwheel.
- You have removed the key.

Do not use the tow ball arm if any of these cannot be met. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

CONNECTING A TRAILER

Trailer Towing Connector (if Equipped)



When attaching the trailer wiring connector to your vehicle, only use a proper fitting connector that works with the vehicle and trailer functions.

Trailer Lamps



WARNING: Never connect any trailer lamp wiring to the vehicle's tail lamp wiring; this may damage the electrical system resulting in fire. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible for assistance in proper trailer tow wiring installation. Additional electrical equipment may be required.

Most towed vehicles require trailer lamps. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working.

Connecting a Trailer

CONNECTING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Description
Trailer disconnected	The system senses a trailer connection disconnecting, either intentionally or unintentionally, during a given ignition cycle.

Towing a Trailer

TOWING A TRAILER PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not exceed 100 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The rear tire pressures must be increased by 0.2 bar above specification. Do not exceed the maximum pressure stated on the tire sidewall. This could cause serious personal injury.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum gross vehicle weight stated on the vehicle identification plate. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended gross trailer weight exceeds the limit of your vehicle and could result in vehicle damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not exceed the maximum vertical load on the tow ball. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: The anti-lock brake system does not control the trailer brakes.

TOWING A TRAILER LIMITATIONS

The vehicle's trailer towing capacity could be limited by outside temperatures.

Note: *Not all vehicles are suitable or approved to have a tow bar fitted. Ask an authorized dealer for more information.*

Note: *The maximum permissible trailer vertical weight on the trailer identification plate is the trailer manufacturer's testing value. The vehicle maximum permissible trailer vertical weight may be lower.*

TRAILER TOWING HINTS

Towing a trailer changes the handling characteristics of your vehicle and increases stopping distances. Adapt your speed and driving behavior to the load of the trailer.

The stability of your vehicle-to-trailer combination depends on the quality of the trailer.

When towing a trailer:

- Obey country specific regulations for towing a trailer.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h even if a country allows higher speeds under certain conditions.
- Place loads as low as possible and central to the axle of your trailer. If you are towing with an unloaded vehicle, you should place the load in your trailer toward the front, within the maximum vertical load, as this gives the best stability.
- The trailer vertical weight on the tow ball is essential for the driving stability of your vehicle and trailer.
- The vertical weight on the tow ball should be at least 4% of the trailer weight and not exceed the maximum permissible weight.
- Reduce speed immediately if the trailer shows any sign of swaying.

Towing a Trailer

Note: We recommend that you use a trailer safety cable. Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you use a trailer safety cable.

LAUNCHING OR RETRIEVING A BOAT OR PERSONAL WATERCRAFT

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval:

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 15 cm above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

Exceeding 15 cm could allow water to enter vehicle components, causing internal damage to the components and affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Note: Replace the rear axle lubricant anytime the rear axle has been submerged in water.

Note: Disconnect the trailer wiring connector before backing the trailer into the water.

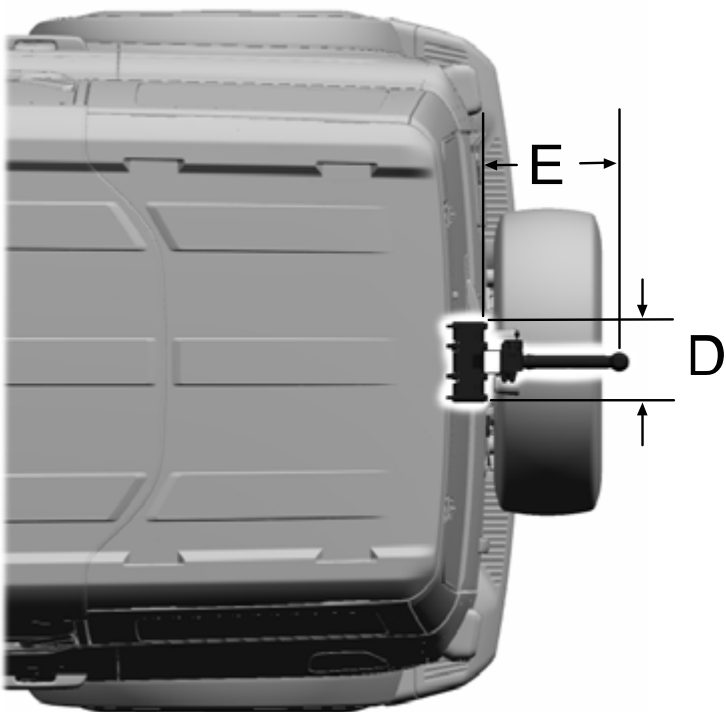
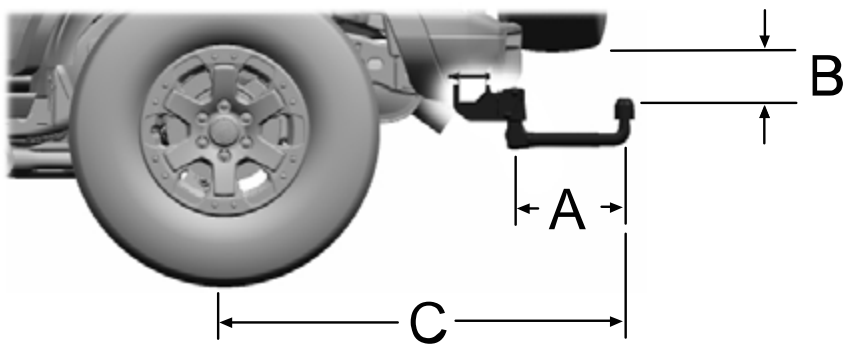
Note: Reconnect the trailer wiring connector after removing the trailer from the water.

Towing a Trailer

TOWING WEIGHTS AND DIMENSIONS

TOW BAR DIMENSIONS

Towing a Trailer



Towing a Trailer

Item	Dimension Description	Dimension mm
A	Bumper to center of tow ball.	262
B	Spare wheel to center of tow ball.	133
C	Wheel center to center of tow ball.	1,067
D	Width of attachment bracket.	231
E	Attachment bracket to center of tow ball.	347

Maximum Permissible Trailer Vertical Weight

Powertrain	kg
Badlands	40 kg
Outer Banks	50 kg

WHAT IS THE MAXIMUM LOADED TRAILER WEIGHT

The maximum loaded trailer weight is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow.

TOWING A TRAILER – TROUBLESHOOTING

TOWING A TRAILER – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Trailer sway Reduce speed	The trailer sway control detects trailer sway. Reduce the vehicle's speed.

Trailer Sway Control

HOW DOES TRAILER SWAY CONTROL WORK

Trailer Sway Control

The system applies the brakes to the individual wheels and reduces engine torque to aid vehicle stability.

If the trailer begins to sway, the stability control lamp flashes and the message **Trailer sway Reduce speed** appears in the information display.

Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Check the vertical weight on the tow ball and trailer load distribution.

TRAILER SWAY CONTROL PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Turning off trailer sway control increases the risk of loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death. Ford does not recommend disabling this feature except in situations where speed reduction may be detrimental (such as hill climbing), the driver has significant trailer towing experience, and can control trailer sway and maintain safe operation.

Note: *This feature only activates when significant trailer sway occurs.*

Note: *This feature does not prevent trailer sway, but reduces it once it begins.*

Note: *This feature cannot stop all trailers from swaying.*

Note: *In some cases, if vehicle speed is too high, the system may activate multiple times, gradually reducing vehicle speed.*

SWITCHING TRAILER SWAY CONTROL ON AND OFF

1. Press **Features** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Towing**.
3. Switch **Trailer sway control** on or off.

The system turns on each time you start your vehicle.

Driving Hints

OFF-ROAD DRIVING

WHAT IS OFF-ROAD DRIVING

Bronco 4x4 Systems

Off-road driving is driving your vehicle on unsurfaced roads or trails, made from dirt, rocks, sand and mud.

Your vehicle has been designed and equipped to explore those places where the road cannot take you, whether you choose a forest trail or the open desert.

OFF-ROAD DRIVING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.

Before going off-road, consult with your local governmental agencies to determine designated off-road trails and recreation areas. Also, be sure to understand any off-road vehicle registration requirements for the area in which you plan on driving.

Tread Lightly is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nation's wilderness areas. The U.S. Forest Service and Bureau of Land Management is encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by treading lightly.

Before taking your vehicle off-road, perform a basic vehicle inspection to make sure the vehicle is in top working condition.

Before you venture off road, have a clear mental picture of the underside of your vehicle. Learn the location of any low hanging items and any skid plates that may be on the vehicle. You can avoid snagging them on rocks and other obstacles if you know where they are.

Memorizing some basic dimensions helps you confidently deal with off-road obstacles. Get to know your vehicle's height and width, its lowest point, its wading depth and angles. Familiarize yourself with your vehicle's on-board technology features.

We recommend driving at least two vehicles when driving off-road. The buddy system helps make sure that help is close at hand should a vehicle become stuck or damaged.

We recommend taking supplies such as a first aid kit, supply of water, tow strap and cell or satellite phone with you any time you plan an off-road excursion.

Note: *Remove the front license plate before off-road driving to achieve optimal performance.*

BASIC OFF-ROAD DRIVING TECHNIQUES

Grip the steering wheel with your thumbs on the outside of the rim. This reduces the risk of injury due to abrupt steering wheel motions that occur when negotiating rough terrain.

Control your throttle, brake and steering inputs in a smooth manner. Sudden inputs to the controls can cause a loss of traction for the vehicle, especially when on sloped terrain or crossing obstacles such as rocks or logs.

Driving Hints

Look ahead on your route noting upcoming obstacles, surface texture or color changes or any other factors which may indicate a change in available traction. Adjust the vehicle speed and route to avoid a loss in traction. Conditions can change causing the course to vary day to day. Mark obstacles with GPS markers to avoid potential vehicle damage. Where necessary, get out of your vehicle and check the terrain.

When driving off-road, if the front or rear suspension is bottoming-out or excessive contact with the skid-plates is happening, reduce the vehicle's speed to avoid potential damage to your vehicle.

If you are driving in a dusty area, be sure to leave ample distance between your vehicle and any other vehicles to allow for adequate vision.

When driving off-road verify that your wipers and washers are working properly and reduce your speed for better visibility.

When driving in desert conditions, we recommend driving with your headlamps on to help other drivers easily see you.

When convoying with other vehicles, we recommend that communication is used, and the lead vehicle notify other vehicles of upcoming obstacles.

Keep available ground clearance in mind and pick a route that minimizes the risk of catching the underside of the vehicle on an obstacle.

When negotiating low speed obstacles, applying light brake pressure in conjunction with the throttle allows you to negotiate the obstacle in a more controlled manner.

Driving off-road requires a high amount of concentration. Even if your local law does not prohibit drinking alcohol when driving off-road we do not recommend it.

DRIVING OFF-ROAD

Driving In Snow and Ice



WARNING: If you are driving in slippery conditions that require tire chains or cables, then it is critical that you drive cautiously. Keep speeds down, allow for longer stopping distances and avoid aggressive steering to reduce the chances of a loss of vehicle control which can lead to serious injury or death. If the rear end of your vehicle slides while cornering, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

Four-wheel drive vehicles have advantages over two-wheel drive vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle. If your vehicle slides when driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control. Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Slowly and steadily apply the accelerator when starting from a full stop. Avoid sudden braking.



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between your vehicle and other vehicles for stopping.

In emergency stopping situations, do not pump the brake pedal, apply the brake firmly.

Driving Hints

Driving In Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Drive through the terrain without varying vehicle speed. Apply the accelerator and avoid excessive wheel slip.

Use the vehicle's momentum to maintain forward motion in sand. Avoid coming to a stop on steep sand slopes as the vehicle may not be able to continue forward after it has stopped.

Driving In Mud

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud.

Even four-wheel drive vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. If your vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of your vehicle.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to the wheels and tires and rotating driveshafts. Excess mud stuck on the wheels and tires and rotating driveshafts can cause an imbalance that could damage drive components.

Note: *The vehicle brakes are less effective when wet or muddy.*

Driving Over Rocks and Gravel

Gravel is a constantly changing, low-grip surface. Driving at slow speeds on gravel reduces the risk of losing traction when you stop, accelerate or turn a corner.

When approaching large rocks, position the vehicle so that the tires pass over the largest obstacle.

Note: *Never attempt to straddle a rock that is large enough to strike your axles or undercarriage.*

Note: *Never attempt to drive over a rock which is large enough to contact the door sills if your vehicle does not have rock rails.*

If you lose traction on your wheels facing uphill, stop and choose a more suitable route.

Leave a generous gap between your vehicle and other vehicles to minimize the risk of damage from flying gravel. Avoid dust clouds as they reduce visibility.

Before navigating on uneven ground, secure anything inside the vehicle. If possible, remove any roof-rack items. Use the lowest gear possible and approach the obstacle at a slow speed.

If your vehicle begins to slide down a slope, steer downhill and gently apply the throttle. If you lose traction on your uphill wheels, stop immediately and choose a more suitable route.

Approach logs, rocky steps or ditches diagonally. Keep at least three wheels on the ground at all times.

Climbing A Hill



WARNING: Extreme care should be used when steering the vehicle in reverse down a slope so as not to cause the vehicle to swerve out of control.

Although natural obstacles can make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, try to drive straight up or straight down.

Note: *Avoid turning on steep slopes or hills. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possible vehicle roll over.*

Whenever driving on a hill, you must first determine the route you can use.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.

Driving Hints

If your vehicle stalls, do not try to turn around because this could cause your vehicle to roll over. It is better to reverse back to a safe location.

Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

If the vehicle is unable to make it up the hill, do not attempt to turn back down the slope.

Apply the accelerator just enough for the wheels to climb the hill.

Note: *Too much acceleration can cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.*

Descending A Hill:

- Use the same gear you would use to climb the hill.
- Do not descend in neutral.
- Disengage overdrive.
- Avoid sudden and excessive braking.

Note: *The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer your vehicle.*

When descending a steep hill in a manual transmission vehicle do not leave the vehicle in gear with the clutch pressed. This could cause damage to your driveline.

Driving Through Water



WARNING: Do not attempt to cross a deep, fast flowing body of water. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

As the water depth increases, you must reduce your vehicle speed to avoid potential vehicle damage.

The key to a safe crossing is the water depth, current and bottom of the water's condition. On soft bottoms, the vehicle sinks in, effectively increasing the water level on the vehicle. Make sure to consider this when determining the depth of water.

Determine the depth and speed of the current before attempting a water crossing.

Be aware that obstacles and debris may be beneath the water's surface.

Note: *Cross flowing water at an angle heading slightly upstream.*

Note: *You should tread lightly and avoid damage to the environment.*

Drive slowly when crossing water. Proceed with a constant slow speed lightly pressing on the accelerator.

Drive through the water very slowly when entering, then build up momentum. Keep your vehicle moving at a steady pace.

Note: *Do not try to accelerate through the water crossing.*

When driving too fast in water or through deep water, the engine, transmission, transfer case, axles, electrical components or vehicle interior could ingest water. Water can cause permanent damage that may not be covered by your vehicle warranty. See **Driving Through Water Limitations** (page 240).

Note: *Failure to follow the recommended speeds can result in vehicle damage.*

Never stop or shut a vehicle off when crossing deep water unless your vehicle ingested water into the engine air intake. If the engine stalls, do not attempt to restart it.

Ease off the accelerator as you reach the other side to diminish the front wave. Apply the accelerator slowly and as necessary to climb out of the other side.

Driving Hints

Muddy waters can reduce the cooling system effectiveness by depositing debris into the radiator.

Extra care must be taken crossing any type of water. Do not drive into water unless necessary. You should only drive through areas that are designated and approved.

High currents even in shallow water can wash the dirt out from around your tires or push your vehicle across slippery rocks or surfaces.

Never attempt to cross flowing water that is deeper than your vehicles ground clearance. Even in low currents your vehicles body surface area can be pushed downstream and out of control.

Do not cross any body of water that is fast flowing and rising, wait for the flow rate to reduce.

Determine exit points that are downstream of your entry point to allow for drifting.

If there are other vehicles ahead, wait until they've left the water. Unsettled water can make a safe passage more challenging.

Know your vehicle's abilities and be able to recover it if something goes wrong.

Keep the doors fully closed during a water crossing.

Vehicles used to traverse water regularly should be periodically inspected for signs of water ingestion in all of the vehicle's fluids. If water is found inside your vehicle fluids, service your vehicle or see an authorized dealer.

After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so, check the brakes, horn, lights, and steering wheel to make sure everything is still in working order.

Avoid Getting High-Centered

Always keep available ground clearance in mind and pick a route that minimizes the risk of catching the underside of the vehicle on an obstacle and getting high-centered.

Freeing A Stuck Vehicle



WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 55 km/h. The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Recovery hooks are mounted to the vehicle's structure and are used to pull out the vehicle from a surface or location when stuck. Recover your vehicle using various towing apparatus attached to your recovery hook such as winch, open hook, or strap.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, you may rock it out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press the accelerator in each gear.

Note: Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature damage to the transmission may occur.

Note: Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.

If you are unable to free your vehicle call roadside assistance.

Crossing A Ravine, Gully, Ditch, Washout Or Rut

Review the path ahead before attempting to cross any obstacle. Review the obstacle from outside the vehicle for an understanding of the terrain condition in front of and behind the obstacle. Approach obstacles slowly and inch the vehicle over. Ditches and washouts should be crossed at a 45 degree angle when possible.

Driving Hints

Driving Over Logs

Review the path ahead before attempting to cross any obstacle. Review the obstacle from outside the vehicle for an understanding of the terrain condition in front of and behind the obstacle.

Approach obstacles slowly and inch the vehicle over, approaching at a 15 degree angle.

Note: *It is best to have a front tire on top of the log when the other begins to climb over.*

If a large obstacle near the log such as a rock cannot be avoided, choose a path that places the rock directly under the tire rather than the undercarriage of the vehicle. This helps prevent damage to the vehicle.

DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE AT HIGH SPEEDS

If you plan on using your vehicle for severe, high speed off-road use, we recommend the following:

- Equipping your vehicle with the safety equipment appropriate for off-road recovery.
- Using personal safety equipment, including a certified helmet and approved neck restraint device.
- Doing a low speed reconnaissance run in unfamiliar areas to become aware of any obstacles that you could encounter.

Your vehicle can incur damage if driven beyond its capabilities. Skid plates, shock guards and running boards are designed to help limit damage to vital components and exterior finishes, but cannot prevent all damage if driven in extreme off-road conditions. Damage to skid plates, shock guards, running boards and exterior finishes as well as bent, cracked or broken body, frame and chassis components may not be covered by warranty.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER LIMITATIONS

Maximum Wading Depth
800 mm

When you are driving through water do not exceed 7 km/h.

OFF-ROAD DRIVING AIDS

[Bronco 4x4 Systems](#)

Selecting an Off-Road G.O.A.T Mode

Using the appropriate drive mode increases your vehicle's control. See **G.O.A.T. Mode Control** (page 191).

Note: *Drive modes are selected by using the Goes Over Any-type of Terrain G.O.A.T. MODES controller.*

Using Four-Wheel Drive

Your vehicle has a four-wheel drive system that offers various modes to help you optimize traction on any off-road surface. See **Four-Wheel Drive** (page 135).

Driving Hints

Using the Stabilizer Bar Disconnect

The stabilizer bar disconnect improves suspension articulation, improving traction and comfort in rough terrain.

The vehicle's disconnect system is hydraulically actuated.

Your vehicle is capable of disconnecting under high load. Your vehicle is also capable of reconnecting under all conditions.

It is not necessary for the vehicle to be on level ground in order to reconnect the stabilizer bar. See **Stabilizer Bar Disconnect** (page 167).

See **Stabilizer Bar Disconnect** (page 167).

Using the Cameras Off-Road

Use the 360 degree camera to enhance your off-road experience. See **360 Degree Camera** (page 180).

Using the Front and Rear Differential Lock

When engaged, the front and rear differential lock provides additional traction to your vehicle by forcing either the two rear wheels or two front wheels to turn at the same speed.

You can activate and deactivate the front and rear differential lock on the fly within the operating speed range. See **Electronic Locking Differential** (page 143).

Using Trail Control

The system works in a similar manner to cruise control in off-road conditions. Trail Control provides you the ability to maneuver the vehicle without using the throttle and brake pedals.

Trail Control allows you to set a speed between 1.6 km/h to 23 km/h in a forward motion and 1.6 km/h to 8 km/h in reverse. The system controls acceleration and braking in difficult off-road environments, which allows you to focus on steering. See **Trail Control** (page 160).

Trail Control Performance:

- Manages wheel slip to maximize traction.
- Removes the need for you to use both feet when driving in off-road situations.
- Provides braking to maximize traction in descents.
- Gives you confidence in difficult environments.

Using Trail One Pedal Drive

Trail one pedal drive coordinates propulsive and braking torque through your application of the accelerator pedal to simulate a two footed driving technique.

Use this when driving over large obstacles, such as rocks or logs, to help maintain a constant vehicle speed.

In 4H, the system offers lift pedal braking and auto hill hold functionality. See **What Is Trail One Pedal Drive** (page 161).

Note: *Trail one pedal drive is only available when the vehicle is in 4H or 4L.*

Using Trail Turn Assist

The feature reduces the turn radius of the vehicle on off-road surfaces.

The system reduces driver effort to negotiate difficult off-road terrain by allowing the vehicle to make a tight turn in a single maneuver that might otherwise require a three point turn. See **Trail Turn Assist** (page 165).

Note: *Trail turn assist is only available when the vehicle is in 4H or 4L.*

Driving Hints

Note: *Trail turn assist cannot activate if the rear differential is locked.*

What Are Rock Rails (If Equipped)

Rock rails protect the rocker and body side from damage and provide a sliding surface to allow the vehicle to cross boulders and rock ledges.

Rock rails also can act as a pivot point to sharply turn the vehicle in tight spaces with high walls or rocks present.

AFTER DRIVING YOUR VEHICLE OFF-ROAD



WARNING: After off-road use, before returning to the road, check the wheels and tires for damage. Off-road use may cause damage to your wheels and tires that can lead to tire failure, loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.

Driving off-road places more stress on your vehicle than most on-road driving. After driving off-road, check for damage to the wheels, chassis and underbody.

Inspect the underbody of your vehicle by checking tires, body structure, steering, suspension, and exhaust system for damage.

Inspect the tires for any cuts in the tread or sidewall area. Also inspect the sidewall for any bulge indicating damage to the tire.

Make sure the tires are inflated to proper tire pressure as indicated on the tire placard.

Check the radiator for mud and debris and clean as needed.

Check that the air filter is clean and dry.

Remove accumulations of plants or brush. These things could be a fire hazard or hide damage to the fuel lines, brake hoses and propeller shafts.

Make sure the grille and radiator are clear of any obstructions that may affect cooling.

After extended operation in mud, sand, water, or similar dirty conditions, inspect the wipers and washers to make sure they are working.

Note: *Mud caked windows are hard to see through and can damage wiper blades or motor.*

Check wipers for debris or anything that may scratch the windshield.

If you experience unusual vibration after driving in mud, slush or similar conditions, check the wheels for impacted material. Impacted material can cause vibrations when driving and wheel imbalance. Remove the material to reduce the vibration.

Note: *If you have removed the impacted material from the wheels and your vehicle still has a vibration check your vehicle for damage or see an authorized dealer.*

Inspect the exhaust system for damage or looseness.

Make sure that the brakes are in proper working order and free of any mud, stones and debris, which can become trapped around the brake rotor, backing plate and caliper.

Inspect the wheels for dents, cracks, or other damage.

Inspect undercarriage fasteners. If any are loose or damaged, tighten or replace ensuring that the proper torque specification is used.

Inspect for torn or punctured boots on ball joints, half shafts, steering gears.

Driving Hints

Refit the front license plate if removed previously.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below approximately -25°C.

BREAKING-IN

Your vehicle requires a break-in period. For the first 1,600 km, avoid driving at high speeds, heavy braking, aggressive shifting or using your vehicle to tow. During this time, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics.

DRIVING ECONOMICALLY

The following helps to improve fuel consumption:

- Drive smoothly, accelerate gently and anticipate the road ahead to avoid heavy braking.
- Regularly check your tire pressures and make sure that they are inflated to the correct pressure.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and carry out the recommended checks.
- Plan your journey and check the traffic before you set off. It is more efficient to combine errands into a single trip whenever possible.
- Avoid idling the engine in cold weather or for extended periods. Start the engine only when you are ready to set off.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight in your vehicle as extra weight wastes fuel.

- Do not add unnecessary accessories to the exterior of your vehicle, for example running boards. If you use a roof rack, remember to fold it down or remove it when not in use.
- Do not shift into neutral when you are braking or when your vehicle is slowing down.
- Shut all windows when driving at high speeds.
- Switch off all electric systems when not in use, for example air conditioning. Make sure that you unplug any accessories from the auxiliary power points when not in use.

FLOOR MATS



WARNING: Use a floor mat designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle that does not obstruct the pedal area. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.





WARNING: Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.



WARNING: Secure the floor mat to both retention devices so that it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

Driving Hints

 **WARNING:** Do not place additional floor mats or any other covering on top of the original floor mats. This could result in the floor mat interfering with the operation of the pedals. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver foot well while your vehicle is moving. Objects that are loose can become trapped under the pedals causing a loss of vehicle control.



To install floor mats that have eyelets, position the floor mat eyelet over the retention post and press down to lock in position. Repeat for all eyelets on the floor mat.

To remove the floor mats, reverse the installation procedure.

Note: *Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.*

Crash and Breakdown Information

SWITCHING THE HAZARD FLASHERS ON AND OFF



The hazard flasher button is on the instrument panel. Press the button to switch the hazard flashers on if your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other road users.

When you switch the hazard flashers on, all front and rear direction indicators flash.

Note: *The hazard flashers operate when the ignition is in any position, or if the key is not in the ignition. The battery loses charge and could have insufficient power to restart your vehicle.*

Press the button again to switch them off.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

JUMP STARTING PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



WARNING: Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.



WARNING: Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.



WARNING: Make sure that the cables are clear of any moving parts and fuel delivery system parts.



WARNING: Connect batteries with only the same nominal voltage.



WARNING: If the engine is running while the hood is open, stay clear of moving engine components. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Do not attempt to push-start an automatic transmission vehicle. This could cause transmission damage.

Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle. This could damage your vehicle's electrical system.

PREPARING THE VEHICLE

Use only a 12 volt supply to start your vehicle.

Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle, making sure the two vehicles do not touch.

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

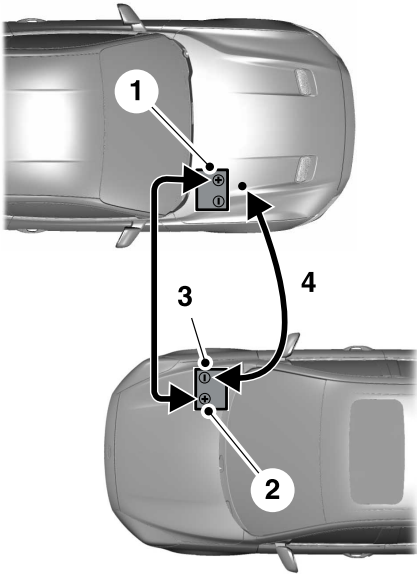
Connecting the Jumper Cables



WARNING: Do not connect the negative jumper cable to any other part of your vehicle. Use the ground point.

Note: *If you are using a jump pack or booster box, follow the manufacturer's instructions.*

Crash and Breakdown Information



1. Pull the red plastic boot backward. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) jumper cable to an exposed metal part of the disabled vehicle's engine, as shown in the following illustration, away from the battery and fuel injection system, or connect the negative (-) jumper cable to a ground connection point if available.



Starting the Engine

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and moderately rev the engine, or gently press the accelerator to keep the engine speed between 2000 and 3000 RPM, as shown in your tachometer.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once you start the disabled vehicle, run both vehicle engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: Do not switch the headlamps on when disconnecting the cables. The peak voltage could blow the bulbs.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

WHAT IS THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system helps draw attention to your vehicle in the event of a serious impact.

Crash and Breakdown Information

HOW DOES THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM WORK

The system is designed to turn the hazard flashers on, turn the courtesy lamps on, intermittently sound the horn and unlock all doors in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag or the seatbelt pretensioners.

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

Depending on applicable laws in the country your vehicle was built for, the horn does not sound in the event of a serious impact.

SWITCHING THE POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM OFF

Press the hazard flasher switch, the unlock button on the remote control, the panic button on the remote control or cycle the ignition to switch the system off.

Note: *The alert turns off when the vehicle battery runs out of charge.*

POST IMPACT BRAKING

HOW DOES POST IMPACT BRAKING WORK

In the event of a moderate to severe crash, the braking system reduces the vehicle's speed in order to prevent or reduce the impact of a potential secondary crash.

POST IMPACT BRAKING LIMITATIONS

Post impact braking does not activate if any of the following occur:

- The anti-lock braking system is damaged during the collision.
- Electronic stability control is disabled.

OVERRIDING POST IMPACT BRAKING

You can override post impact braking by pressing the brake or accelerator pedal.

POST IMPACT BRAKING INDICATORS



It flashes when a post impact braking event is occurring.

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

WHAT IS AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF

The automatic crash shutoff is designed to stop the fuel going to the engine in the event of a moderate or severe crash.

Note: *Not every impact causes a shutoff.*

AUTOMATIC CRASH SHUTOFF PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

RE-ENABLING YOUR VEHICLE

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. Attempt to start your vehicle.
3. Switch the ignition off.
4. Attempt to start your vehicle.

Crash and Breakdown Information

Note: If your vehicle does not start after the third attempt, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

RECOVERY TOWING

ACCESSING THE FRONT TOWING POINT



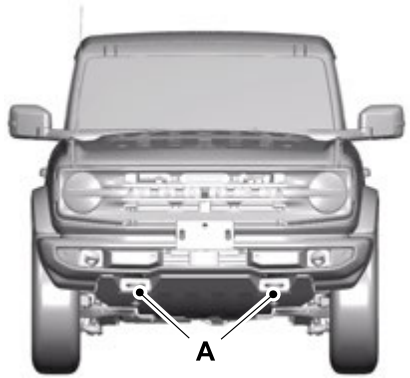
WARNING: Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.



WARNING: Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.



WARNING: Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.



A. Front recovery hooks.

Note: Do not apply a load to the recovery hooks that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.

Before using recovery hooks:

- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.

Crash and Breakdown Information

- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

ACCESSING THE REAR TOWING POINT



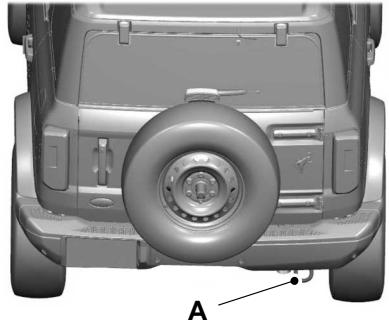
WARNING: Using recovery hooks is dangerous and should only be done by a person familiar with proper vehicle recovery safety practices. Improper use of recovery hooks may cause hook failure or separation from the vehicle and could result in serious injury or death.



WARNING: Slowly remove the slack from the recovery strap prior to pulling. Failure to do so can introduce significantly higher loads which can cause the recovery hooks to break off, or the recovery strap to fail which can cause serious injury or death.



WARNING: Never link two straps together with a clevis pin. These heavy metal objects could become projectiles if the strap breaks and can cause serious injury or death.



A. Rear recovery hook.

Note: Do not apply a load to the recovery hook that is greater than the gross vehicle weight rating of your vehicle.

Before using the recovery hook:

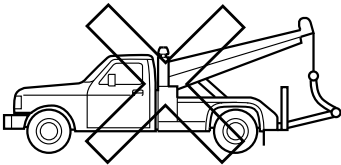
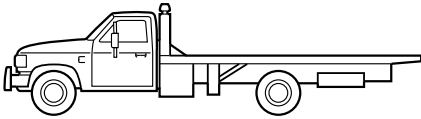
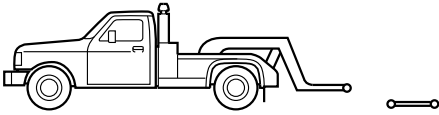
- Make sure all attaching points are secure and capable of withstanding the applied load.
- Do not use chains, cables or tow straps with metal hook ends.
- Only use recovery straps that have a minimum breaking strength two to three times the gross vehicle weight of the stuck vehicle.
- Make sure the recovery strap is in good condition and free of visible cuts, tears or damage.
- Use a damper device such as a tarp, heavy blanket or piece of carpet, and place it over the recovery strap to help absorb the energy in the event the strap breaks.
- Make sure the stuck vehicle is not loaded heavier than its gross vehicle weight rating specified on the certification label.

Crash and Breakdown Information

- Align the tow vehicle and stuck vehicle in a straight line, within 10 degrees.
- Keep bystanders to the sides of the vehicle, at a distance of at least twice the length of the recovery strap. This helps avoid injury from the hazard of a recovery hook or strap breaking, or a vehicle lurching into their path.

All-wheel or four-wheel drive vehicles require that all wheels be off the ground using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission and drive system.

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or your roadside assistance service provider.

Your manufacturer produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures.

Towing Your Vehicle

TOWING YOUR VEHICLE PRECAUTIONS

Use the following guidelines when towing your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Note: *Make sure you properly secure your vehicle to the tow vehicle.*

Note: *If you are unsure of the vehicle's configuration, contact an authorized dealer.*

EMERGENCY TOWING

If you need to tow your vehicle, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

Fuses

FUSE PRECAUTIONS

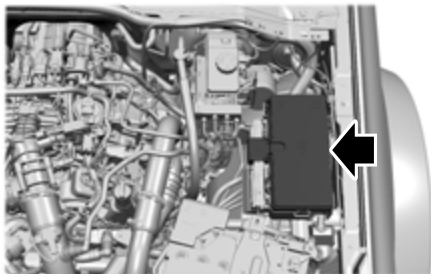
⚠ WARNING: Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

⚠ WARNING: To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

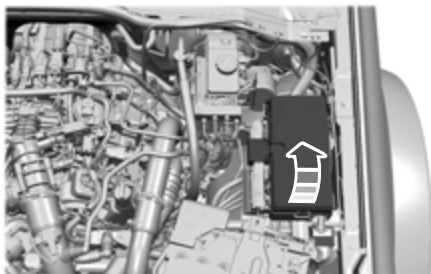
⚠ WARNING: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX

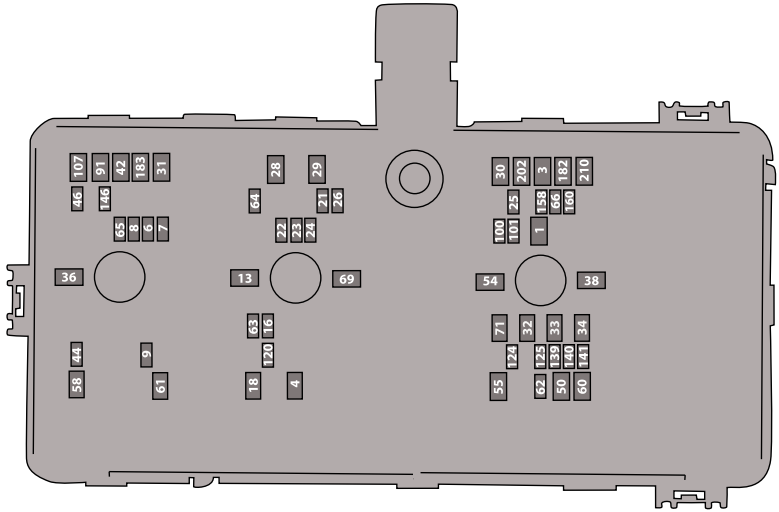


ACCESSING THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE UNDER HOOD FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	30 A	Body control module - battery power in feed 1.
3	30 A	Body control module - battery power in feed 2.
4	30 A	Fuel pump.
6	25 A	Powertrain control module power.
7	30 A	Powertrain components.
8	20 A	Powertrain components.
9	20 A	Ignition coils.
13	40 A	Blower motor.
16	10 A	Rear windshield washer.
18	30 A	Starter motor.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
21	10 A	Not used (spare).
22	10 A	360 degree camera module.
23	10 A	Anti-lock brake system run-start feed.
24	10 A	Powertrain control module. Power steering module.
25	20 A	Blind spot information system. Rear view camera. Adaptive cruise control. Driveline control module.
26	15 A	Transmission control module.
28	60 A	Anti-lock brake system valves.
29	60 A	Anti-lock brake system pump.
30	30 A	Driver power seat.
31	30 A	Passenger power seat.
32	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
33	20 A	Auxiliary power point.
34	—	Not used.
36	—	Not used.
38	30 A	Heated seat module.
42	30 A	Trailer brake control module.
44	10 A	Brake on-off switch.
46	20 A	SYNC module.
50	40 A	Heated rear windshield.
54	40 A	Driveline control module.
55	30 A	Trailer tow park lamp relay.

Fuses

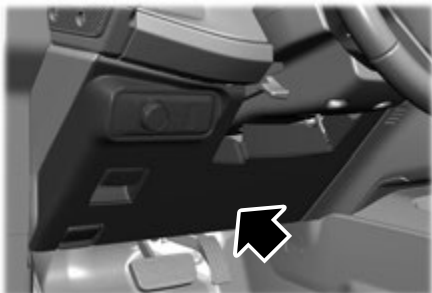
Item	Rating	Protected Component
58	20 A	Trailer tow backup lamps.
60	30 A	Upfitter switch #1.
61	15 A	Upfitter switch #2.
62	10 A	Upfitter switch #3.
63	10 A	Upfitter switch #4.
64	10 A	Upfitter switch #5.
65	10 A	Upfitter switch #6.
66	10 A	Stability bar disconnect module.
69	30 A	Front windshield wiper.
71	30 A	Rear windshield wiper.
91	40 A	Trailer tow light module.
100	20 A	Left-hand headlamps.
101	20 A	Right-hand headlamps.
107	30 A	Trailer tow battery charge.
120	10 A	Fuel injectors (2.7L).
124	5 A	Not used (spare).
125	10 A	USB smart charger 1.
139	5 A	USB smart charger 2.
140	5 A	Not used (spare).
141	5 A	Not used (spare).
146	20 A	Amplifier.
158	10 A	Stability bar disconnect module run/start.
160	10 A	Smart data link control.
182	60 A	Driver door module.

Fuses

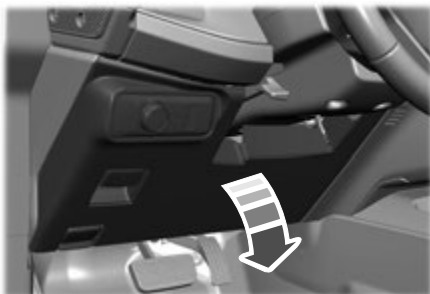
Item	Rating	Protected Component
183	60 A	Passenger door module.
202	60 A	Body control module B+.
210	30 A	Body control module start stop.

BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX

LOCATING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



ACCESSING THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Fuses

IDENTIFYING THE FUSES IN THE BODY CONTROL MODULE FUSE BOX



Item	Rating	Protected Component
1	—	Not used.
2	10 A	Power windows. DC/AC inverter. Upfitter switches.
3	7.5 A	Exterior mirrors. Wireless charging module.
4	20 A	Not used (spare).
5	—	Not used.
6	—	Not used.
7	10 A	Not used.
8	5 A	Not used (spare).
9	5 A	Not used (spare).
10	—	Not used.
11	—	Not used.
12	7.5 A	Climate control.

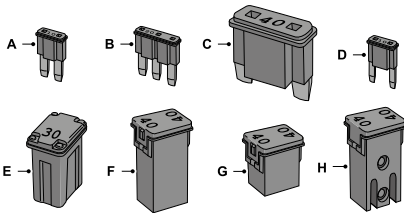
Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
		Gateway module.
13	7.5 A	Steering column control module. Instrument cluster module.
14	15 A	Not used (spare).
15	15 A	Not used (spare).
16	—	Not used.
17	7.5 A	Not used (spare).
18	7.5 A	Not used (spare).
19	5 A	Ignition switch. Headlamps.
20	5 A	Telematics modem.
21	5 A	In-vehicle temperature and humidity sensor.
22	5 A	Not used.
23	30 A	Not used (spare).
24	30 A	Not used (spare).
25	20 A	Not used (spare).
26	30 A	Not used (spare).
27	30 A	Not used (spare).
28	30 A	Not used (spare).
29	15 A	Not used (spare).
30	—	Not used.
31	10 A	Terrain management switch. Integrated control panel switch. Driveline and chassis controls switch panel. 12 inch center display. Radio frequency receiver module.

Fuses

Item	Rating	Protected Component
32	20 A	Audio control module.
33	—	Not used.
34	—	Not used.
35	5 A	Not used (spare).
36	15 A	Automatic high beam. Image processing module A.
37	20 A	Auto-dimming interior mirror. Parking assist control module. Heated steering wheel.
38	30 A Circuit Breaker	Not used.

IDENTIFYING FUSE TYPES



- A Micro 2.
- B Micro 3.
- C Maxi.
- D Mini.
- E M Case.
- F J Case.
- G J Case Low Profile.
- H Slotted M Case.

FUSES – TROUBLESHOOTING

FUSES – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

When do I need to check a fuse?

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working.

When do I need to replace a fuse?

If a fuse has blown.

How do I identify a blown fuse?

You can identify a blown fuse by a broken wire within the fuse.

Maintenance

MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

Service your vehicle regularly to help maintain its roadworthiness and resale value. There is a large network of authorized dealers that are there to help you with their professional servicing expertise. We believe that their specially trained technicians are best qualified to service your vehicle properly and expertly. They are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools developed specifically for servicing your vehicle.

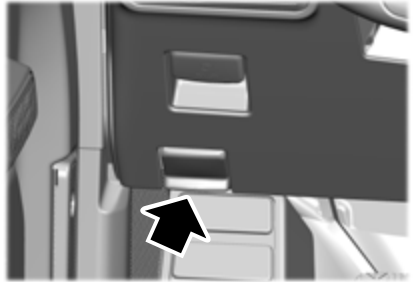
If your vehicle requires professional service, an authorized dealer can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your warranty information to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 316).

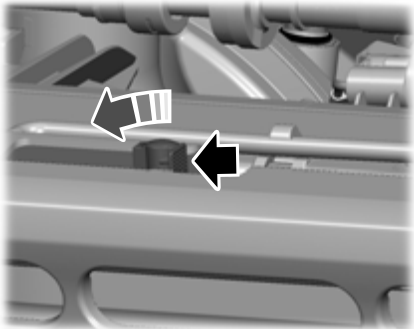
- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning material, such as cigarettes, away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Set the parking brake, shift the transmission to park (P) and block the wheels.

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood

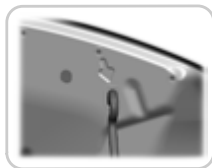


1. Pull the hood release handle under the left-hand side of the instrument panel.



2. Release the hood latch by pushing the secondary release lever to your left-hand side.

Maintenance



3. Open the hood and support it with the hood strut.

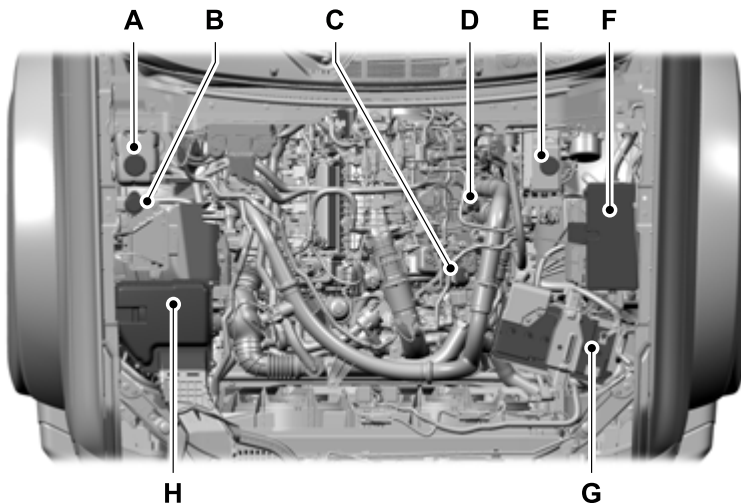
Closing the Hood



WARNING: Make sure that you fully latch the hood before driving. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

1. Fully stow the strut prior to lowering the hood.
2. To close, lower the hood and make sure that it fully latches.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 2.7L ECOBOOST™



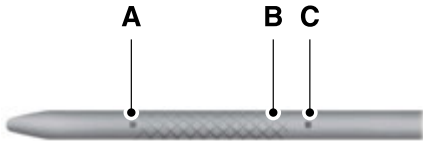
- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Checking the Coolant** (page 263).
- B Windshield washer fluid reservoir. See **Adding Washer Fluid** (page 71).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Adding Engine Oil** (page 262).

Maintenance

- D Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick Overview** (page 262).
- E Brake fluid reservoir. See **Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir** (page 147).
- F Engine compartment fuse box. See **Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 252).
- G Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 269).
- H Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 267).

ENGINE OIL

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK OVERVIEW



- A Minimum.
- B Nominal.
- C Maximum.

CHECKING THE ENGINE OIL LEVEL

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off after warm up and wait 15 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

Note: *Checking the oil level too soon could result in an inaccurate reading.*

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth.

4. Reinstall the dipstick and make sure it is fully seated.
5. Remove the dipstick again to check the oil level.

Note: *If the oil level is between the maximum and minimum marks, the oil level is acceptable. Do not add oil.*

6. If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.
7. Reinstall the dipstick. Make sure it is fully seated.

Note: *The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km.*

Note: *Increases in oil level can occur from frequent short trips that do not allow the engine to get to operating temperature, as well as frequent idling or low speed driving for long periods of time.*

Note: *If oil levels are continuously noted above the maximum mark, schedule a visit to your authorized dealer.*

ADDING ENGINE OIL



WARNING: Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.



WARNING: Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Maintenance

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that the vehicle warranty may not cover.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets our specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 316).
4. Reinstall the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

RESETTING THE INTELLIGENT OIL LIFE MONITOR

Use the instrument cluster display controls on the steering wheel to reset the oil change reminder.

From the main menu scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Settings	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Vehicle Maintenance	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Oil life reset	Press the right arrow button, then from this menu scroll to the following message.
Hold OK to reset	Press and hold the OK button until the instrument cluster displays the following message.

Message	Action and Description
	Reset successful
	When the oil change reminder resets the instrument cluster displays 100%. Remaining oil life {##0}%
	If the instrument cluster displays one of the following messages, repeat the process. Not reset Reset cancelled

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

For filling information, please refer to the Capacities and Specifications section of your owner's manual. See **Engine Oil Capacity and Specification** (page 319).

CHECKING THE COOLANT

When the engine is cold, check the concentration and level of the coolant at the intervals listed in the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: Make sure that the coolant level is between the minimum and maximum marks on the coolant reservoir.

Note: Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.

If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.

Maintenance

Maintain coolant concentration within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -34°C and -37°C. Coolant concentration should be checked using a refractometer. We do not recommend the use of hydrometers or coolant test strips for measuring coolant concentration.

Adding Coolant



WARNING: Keep your hands and clothing clear of the cooling fan.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not add coolant when the vehicle is on or the cooling system is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



WARNING: Do not add coolant further than the **MAX** mark.



WARNING: Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



WARNING: Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.

Note: Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems. Resulting component damage may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable.

It is very important to use prediluted coolant approved to the correct specification in order to avoid plugging the small passageways in the engine cooling system. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 316). Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle. Mixing of engine coolants or using an incorrect coolant may harm the engine or cooling system components and could void the vehicle Warranty.

Note: If prediluted coolant is not available, use the approved concentrated coolant diluting it to 50/50 with deionized or distilled water. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 316). Using water that has not been deionized may contribute to deposit formation, corrosion and plugging of the small cooling system passageways.

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Unscrew the cap slowly. Any pressure escapes as you unscrew the cap.
2. Add enough prediluted coolant to reach the correct level.

Note: We do not recommend the use of recycled coolant.

3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn the cap clockwise until it contacts the hard stop.
4. Check the coolant level in the coolant reservoir the next few times you drive your vehicle. If necessary, repeat step 2.

Maintenance

If you have to add more than 1 L of engine coolant per month, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

In case of emergency, you can add a large amount of water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location. Service your vehicle as soon as possible.

Water alone, without engine coolant, can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.

Do not use the following as a coolant substitute, as they can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing:

- Alcohol.
- Methanol.
- Brine.
- Any coolant mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze.

Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant. These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the coolant.

Severe Climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates, you may need to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.

Note: *A coolant concentration of 60% provides improved freeze point protection. Coolant concentrations above 60% decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the coolant and could cause engine damage.*

If you drive in extremely hot climates, you may need to decrease the coolant concentration to 40%.

Note: *A coolant concentration of 40% provides improved overheat protection. Coolant concentrations below 40% decrease the overheat and corrosion protection characteristics of the coolant and could cause engine damage.*

Coolant Change



WARNING: Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.

Change the coolant at specific mileage intervals. Refer to the scheduled maintenance information.

Note: *Dispose of used coolant in the appropriate manner.*

Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Fail-Safe Cooling

Fail-safe cooling allows you to temporarily drive your vehicle before any incremental component damage occurs. The fail-safe distance depends on ambient temperature, vehicle load and terrain.

How Fail-Safe Cooling Works



WARNING: If you continue to drive your vehicle when the engine is overheating, the engine could stop without warning. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle.



If the engine begins to overheat, the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone:

Maintenance



A warning lamp illuminates and a message may appear in the information display.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine automatically switches to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs, your vehicle still operates, however:

- Engine power is limited.
- The air conditioning system turns off.

Continued operation increases the engine temperature, causing the engine to completely shut down. Your steering and braking effort increases in this situation.

When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When Fail-Safe Mode Is Activated



WARNING: Fail-safe mode is for use during emergencies only. Operate your vehicle in fail-safe mode only as long as necessary to bring your vehicle to rest in a safe location and seek immediate repairs. When in fail-safe mode, your vehicle will have limited power, will not be able to maintain high-speed operation, and may completely shut down without warning, potentially losing engine power, power steering assist, and power brake assist, which may increase the possibility of a crash resulting in serious injury.



WARNING: Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine is on or the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Your vehicle has limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, drive your vehicle with caution. Your vehicle does not maintain high-speed operation and the engine could operate poorly.

Remember that the engine is capable of automatically shutting down to prevent engine damage. In this situation:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and switch the engine off.
2. If you are a member of a roadside assistance program, we recommend that you contact your roadside assistance service provider.
3. If this is not possible, wait for a short period of time for the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. When the engine temperature cools, you can re-start the engine. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

Note: *If you continue to drive your vehicle in fail-safe mode without repairing it, you will damage your engine.*

Maintenance

Engine Coolant Temperature Management (If Equipped)



WARNING: To reduce the risk of crash and injury, be prepared that the vehicle speed may reduce and the vehicle may not be able to accelerate with full power until the coolant temperature reduces.

If you tow a trailer with your vehicle, the engine may temporarily reach a higher temperature during severe operating conditions, for example ascending a long or steep grade in high ambient temperatures.

At this time, you may notice the coolant temperature gauge moves toward the red zone and a message may appear in the information display.

You may notice a reduction in vehicle speed caused by reduced engine power in order to manage the engine coolant temperature. Your vehicle may enter this mode if certain high-temperature and high-load conditions take place. The amount of speed reduction depends on vehicle loading, grade and ambient temperature. If this occurs, there is no need to stop your vehicle. You can continue to drive.

The air conditioning may automatically turn on and off during severe operating conditions to protect the engine from overheating. When the coolant temperature decreases to the normal operating temperature, the air conditioning turns on.

If the coolant temperature gauge moves fully into the red zone, or if the coolant temperature warning or service engine soon messages appear in your information display, do the following:

1. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Fully apply the parking brake, shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Leave the engine running until the coolant temperature gauge needle returns to the normal position. If the temperature does not drop after several minutes, follow the remaining steps.
3. Switch the engine off and wait for it to cool. Check the coolant level.
4. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, add prediluted coolant immediately.
5. If the coolant level is normal, restart the engine and continue.

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER - 2.7L ECOBOOST™



WARNING: To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

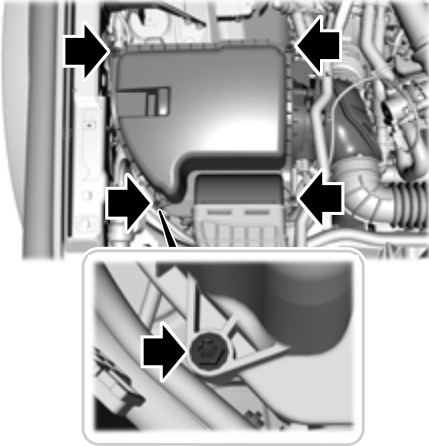
Change the air filter element at the proper intervals.

When changing the air filter element, use only the air filter element listed. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 316).

Note: *Failure to use the correct air filter element could result in severe engine damage that the vehicle Warranty may not cover.*

Note: *When servicing the air cleaner, do not allow foreign material to enter the air induction system. The engine is susceptible to damage from even small particles.*

Maintenance




1. Remove the screws from the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully lift the air filter housing cover.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. To install, reverse the removal procedure.
5. Tighten fasteners to 2.8 Nm


CHANGING THE FUEL FILTER


Your vehicle has a lifetime fuel filter that integrates with the fuel tank. It does not need regular maintenance or replacement.


12V BATTERY

12V BATTERY PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.

 **WARNING:** When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

 **WARNING:** Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

 **WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. **Wash your hands after handling.**

Maintenance



WARNING: This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.



WARNING: For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

WHAT IS THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

The battery management system monitors battery conditions and takes actions to extend battery life.

HOW DOES THE BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM WORK

If excessive battery drain is detected, the system temporarily disables some electrical systems to protect the battery.

Systems included are:

- Heated rear window.
- Heated seats.
- Climate control.
- Heated steering wheel.
- Audio unit.
- Navigation system.

A message could appear in the information display to alert you that battery protection actions are active. This message is only for notification that an action is taking place, and not intended to indicate an electrical problem or that the battery requires replacement.

BATTERY MANAGEMENT SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

After battery replacement, or in some cases after charging the battery with an external charger, the battery management system requires eight hours of vehicle sleep time to relearn the battery state of charge. During this time, your vehicle must remain fully locked with the ignition switched off.

Note: *Prior to relearning the battery state of charge, the battery management system could temporarily disable some electrical systems.*

Electrical Accessory Installation

To make sure the battery management system works correctly, do not connect an electrical device ground connection directly to the battery negative post. This can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *If you add electrical accessories or components to the vehicle, it could adversely affect battery performance and durability. This could also affect the performance of other electrical systems in the vehicle.*

CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

The battery is in the engine compartment. See **Maintenance** (page 260).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If the vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

Maintenance

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid unintended connection or arcing.*

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, it must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Removing the Battery

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period of time after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect and isolate the negative battery cable terminal.

5. Disconnect and isolate the positive battery cable terminal.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.

If you disconnect or replace the vehicle battery, you must reset the following features:

- Window bounce-back. See **Window Bounce-Back** (page 81).
- Clock Settings.
- Pre-set radio stations.

Replacing the Battery

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Note: *Make sure that you correctly install the battery terminal covers, battery cover and battery cable terminals.*

RESETTING THE BATTERY SENSOR

When you install a new battery, reset the battery sensor by doing the following:

1. Switch the ignition on, and leave the engine off.

Note: *Complete Steps 2 and 3 within 10 seconds.*

2. Flash the high beam headlamps five times, ending with the high beams off.
3. Press and release the brake pedal three times.

The battery warning lamp flashes three times to confirm that the reset is successful.

Maintenance

RECYCLING AND DISPOSING OF THE 12V BATTERY



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way.

Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHARGING THE 12V BATTERY

Your vehicle has a high voltage to low voltage energy transfer feature that keeps the 12 volt battery charged by the high voltage battery. If the 12 volt battery level is low, the high voltage battery transfers energy to the 12 volt battery when the vehicle is off.

12V BATTERY – TROUBLESHOOTING

12V BATTERY – WARNING LAMPS



If it illuminates while driving, it indicates a charging system error. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment and have your vehicle immediately checked.

12V BATTERY – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Details
Check Charging system	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service soon	The charging system needs servicing. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Charging system Service now	The charging system needs servicing. Have your vehicle immediately checked.

Maintenance

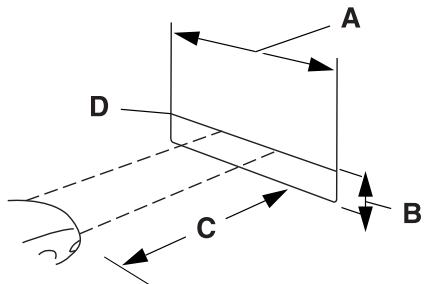
Message	Details
Battery state of charge low	The battery management system determines that the 12V battery is at a low state of charge. Start the engine to charge the battery or charge the battery using an aftermarket battery charger. Always use the vehicle ground point when connecting the negative cable of the external battery charger. See Jump Starting the Vehicle (page 245). This message clears once you restart your vehicle and the battery state of charge has recovered. Do not switch on the ignition when a battery charger is in use to charge the battery.
Turn power off to save battery	The battery management system determines that the battery is at a low state of charge. Turn the ignition off as soon as possible to protect the battery. This message will clear once the vehicle has been started and the battery state of charge has recovered. Turning off unnecessary electrical loads will allow faster battery state-of-charge recovery.
Electrical power saver active Some features turned off See manual	Displayed when the battery management system detects an extended low-voltage condition. Various vehicle features will be disabled to help preserve the battery. Turn off as many of the electrical loads as soon as possible to improve system voltage. If the system voltage has recovered, the disabled features will operate again as normal.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, contact an authorized dealer to have your vehicle headlamps checked for proper alignment.

Headlamp Aiming Target



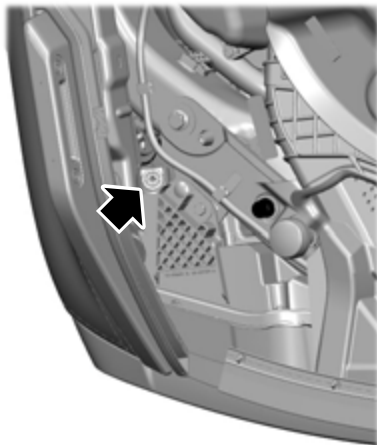
- A 8 ft (2.4 m).
- B Center height of lamp to ground.
- C 25 ft (7.6 m).
- D Horizontal reference line.

Maintenance

1. Park your vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 7.6 m away.
2. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp, indicated by a 3 millimeter circle on the lens, to the ground and mark an 2.4 m horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height, a piece of masking tape works well.
3. Switch on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light hits the wall.



4. On the wall or screen, observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge toward the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, adjust the beam so the edge is at the same height as the horizontal reference line.



5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Use a #2 Phillips screwdriver to turn the adjuster either counterclockwise or clockwise to adjust the headlamp.
6. Repeat Steps 3-7 to adjust the other headlamp.
7. Close the hood and switch off the lamps.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is not adjustable.

Maintenance

EXTERIOR BULBS

EXTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Replacement bulbs are specified in the chart below. Headlamp bulbs must be

marked with an authorized D.O.T. marking for North America to make sure they have the proper lamp performance, light brightness, light pattern and safe visibility. The correct bulbs will not damage the lamp assembly or void the lamp assembly warranty and will provide quality bulb illumination time.

Lamp	Specification	Power (Watt)
Center high mounted stop lamp.	LED	LED
Daytime running lamp.	LED	LED
Front turn signal and parking lamp.	LED	LED
Front fog lamp.	LED	LED
Front side marker lamp.	LED	LED
Headlamp low beam.	LED	LED
Headlamp high beam.	LED	LED
Rear turn signal - high series.	LED	LED
Rear fog lamp.	LED	LED
Rear lamp, stoplamp, rear side marker lamp and rear turn signal - low series.	WT21W/7W	21/7
Reversing lamp - low series.	WT21W	21
Reversing lamp - high series.	LED	LED
Side turn signal lamp.	LED	LED
Tail lamp.	LED	LED

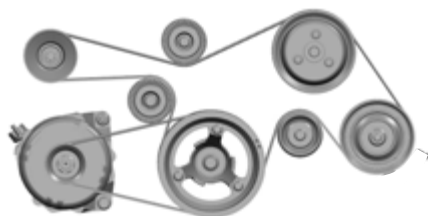
Note: LED lamps are not serviceable. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

INTERIOR BULBS

INTERIOR BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Your vehicle has LED lamps. These are not serviceable items. See an authorized dealer if they fail.

DRIVE BELT ROUTING



Removable Vehicle Components

REMOVABLE WINDOWS (IF EQUIPPED)

REMOVABLE WINDOWS PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Do not drive unless all rear windows are removed or securely installed. Failure to follow these instructions could result in personal injury.

Note: Use caution when moving or handling the windows. Do not drop the windows.

Note: Do not place the windows directly on hard or sharp surfaces. This could cause damage to the window.

REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE REAR QUARTER WINDOWS - VEHICLES WITH: HARD TOP

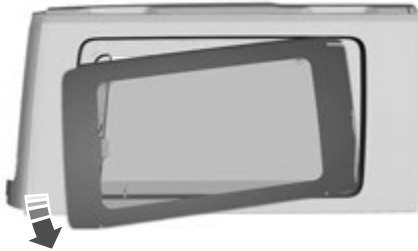
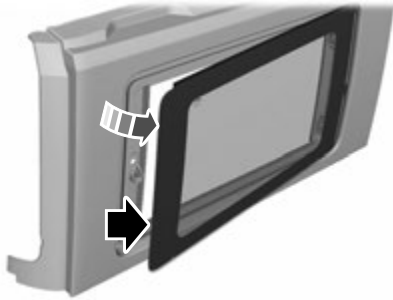
The following procedure shows the passenger side rear window, driver side is similar.



1. Use the provided head driver to remove the screw-in glass frame from the inside of the vehicle.
2. Go to the outside of the vehicle.

Note: The hook feature in the glass allows for a small opening so you can remove the glass from the outside of the vehicle.

Removable Vehicle Components



3. To complete the glass removal process, lift the glass up, pull it out and rock down.
4. Once removed, safely store the glass and the screws in the storage bag.

To install the glass back on your vehicle:


1. From the outside of your vehicle, align and seat the glass pins into the rubber frame.
2. Insert the glass hook into the frame.
3. Go to the inside of the vehicle.
4. Pull the glass tight by grabbing the paddle.
5. Using the provided head driver, align and secure the screws into the glass frame.

REMOVABLE DOORS

REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE DOORS - VEHICLES WITHOUT: TUBE DOORS

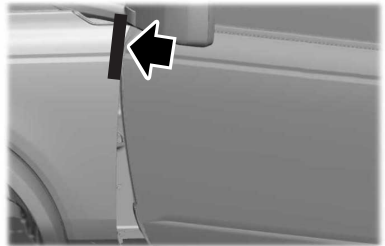
Removing the Doors

[Bronco Door Removal and Storage](#)

 **WARNING:** Removal of doors for off-road use only. Removing the doors from the vehicle will affect protection provided by the doors and may affect safety system performance, including safety canopy and front seat mounted side airbags, during a crash or rollover.

 **WARNING:** Always keep hands, feet and other body parts inside the vehicle at all times.

1. Fully open the windows on the doors you are removing.
2. Switch your vehicle off.
3. Fold the mirrors toward the front of your vehicle before removing the front doors.
4. Fully open the door you are removing.

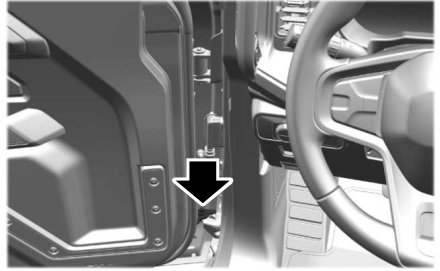


5. Locate the fender protector in the tool pouch and install it over the fender edge near the top door hinge.

Removable Vehicle Components



6. To release the door harness connector, open the connector door and pull the connector straight out.

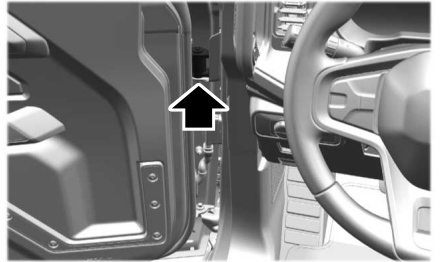


9. Locate the tool pouch and use the hex tool to remove the lower hinge bolt.



7. Make sure to seat the connector door in the closed position.
8. We recommend that you use a door storage bag on the door you are removing.

Note: Make sure you fully secure the bag. Make sure the bag contains the edge and corners of the door to prevent accidental door damage before proceeding with the removal of the door.



10. Remove the upper hinge bolt.

Note: Store the hinge bolts in the pocket of the tool pouch.

Removable Vehicle Components



11. Locate the lower lift handle.



12. Use the door handle as the upper lift handle.
13. With the help of another person, lift the door vertically to separate it from the vehicle.

Note: Use caution when removing the doors as they are heavy.

Note: Store the doors out of the elements to prevent damage.

14. To remove additional doors, repeat Steps 4–13.

15. Return the hex tool to the tool pouch and secure it in the vehicle.
16. Return mirrors to the driving position.

Note: When you remove the doors, the rear seat occupant alert no longer functions.

Note: When you remove the doors or when you have tube doors installed on the vehicle, a warning message related to the electrical system appears on the instrument cluster display with each ignition cycle. The message no longer displays when all factory doors are re-installed. If the message persists after you install all factory doors, check the wiring connectors on all the doors to confirm that you properly connected them.

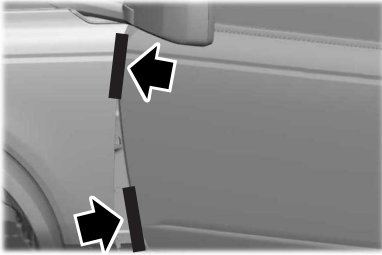
Installing the Doors



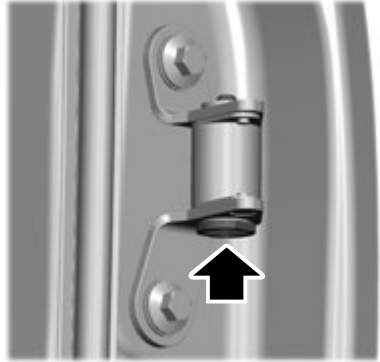
WARNING: Vehicle needs to be turned off before reconnecting doors to verify all electrical connections have been properly connected. Failure to follow these instructions may affect safety system performance, including safety canopy and front seat mounted side airbags, during a crash or rollover.

1. Switch your vehicle off.
2. Fold the mirrors toward the front of the vehicle before installing the front doors.
3. Inspect and clean debris from the bodyside and door hinges.
4. If you are using a storage bag, unzip it far enough to allow access to the hinges.

Removable Vehicle Components



5. Locate the fender and door protectors in the tool pouch. Install one over the fender edge near the upper door hinge and the other on the door edge near the bottom door hinge.



7. Locate the upper door hinge portion.

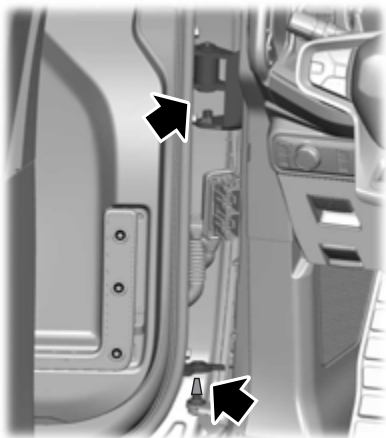


6. Locate the lower bodyside hinge and loosely install alignment pin by hand.



8. Locate the upper bodyside hinge.

Removable Vehicle Components



9. With the help of another person, lower the door onto the body hinges, aligning the upper door portion to the upper body pin and the lower door portion to the alignment pin.

Note: Make sure you do not pinch the wiring connector harness between the door and the body of the vehicle.

10. Remove the lower alignment pin.
 11. Hand start the hinge bolts to the upper and lower door hinges.
 12. Use the hex tool to tighten the bolts.
- Note:** We recommend that you use a torque wrench to tighten the bolts to the required 30 Nm specification.
13. If using a storage bag, remove it from the door.
 14. Open the harness connector door.



15. Insert the door harness into the connector.



16. Open and close the installed door a few times to make sure you aligned it properly and that it operates normally.
17. To install additional doors, repeat Steps 3–16.
18. Close the doors and switch the ignition on. Check for any warning messages.
19. Return the mirrors to the driving position.

DOORS AND LOCKS AUDIBLE WARNINGS

Sounds when a door is not fully closed or removed and your vehicle is moving.

Removable Vehicle Components

REMOVABLE ROOF PANELS (IF EQUIPPED)

REMOVABLE ROOF PANEL PRECAUTIONS

WARNING: When opening, closing, removing or installing the removable vehicle components, take care not to get your fingers or hands caught in the mechanism. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle with only the center or the rear roof panel removed. Failure to follow this instruction could cause unintended separation of the roof panels from your vehicle.

WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle unless the installed roof panels are properly secured. Failure to follow this instruction could cause unintended separation of the roof panels from your vehicle.

Note: Do not step or kneel on the center console during roof removal or once roof panels are removed.

Removal of the center and rear roof panels requires two adults.

Do not cut, drill, weld or modify the roof panels or attach anything other than the factory-installed roof rack.

If there is any damage to the roof panels, see an authorized dealer.

Make sure the locating pins on the rear roof panel sit flush in your vehicle when installed.

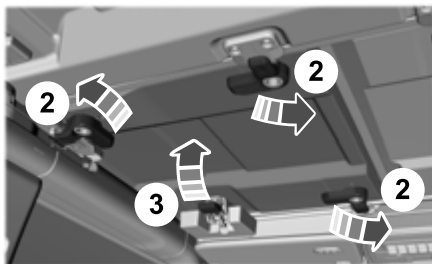
Failure to follow these instructions could cause interior water damage, stains or mildew:

- Properly position the hard top assembly to seal the top to your vehicle during installation. Improper installation could cause water to leak into the vehicle's interior.
- Properly handle and store the removable roof panels. Improper handling and storage could damage the seals, causing water to leak into the vehicle's interior.
- Do not place anything on top of the rear roof panel when it is removed from the vehicle. This could cause damage to the rear roof panel and its seals.

REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE FRONT ROOF PANEL

Remove the driver side front roof panel before removing the passenger side front roof panel.

1. Fold down the sun visor against the windshield.



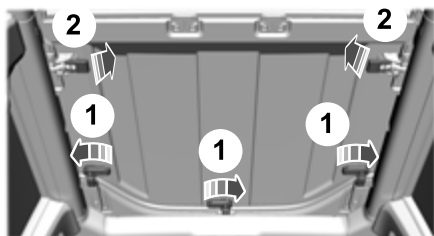
2. Turn the three L-shaped latches on the driver side front roof panel, unlocking them from the roof.
3. Unlatch the driver side header panel latch at the top of the windshield.
4. Remove the driver side front roof panel.

Removable Vehicle Components

- Repeat the steps to remove the passenger side panel front roof panel.
- Store the front roof panels in the storage bag. See **Storing the Doors and the Roof Panels** (page 286).
- To install, reverse the removal procedure.
- Locate the wire harness and washer hose on the driver side rear inside corner of the vehicle.
- Release the locking tab by pushing it down.

REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE CENTER ROOF PANEL

Remove both of the front roof panels before removing the center roof panel.

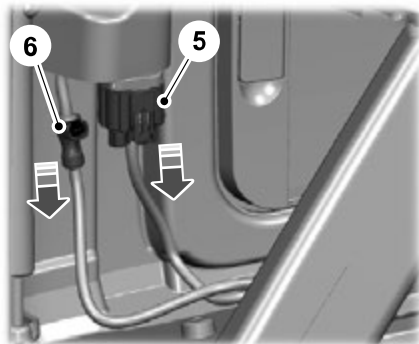


- Turn the three L-shaped latches on the center roof panel, unlocking them from the rear roof panel.
- Unlatch the driver side and passenger side latches of the center roof panel.
- Remove the center roof panel.
- To install, reverse the removal procedure.

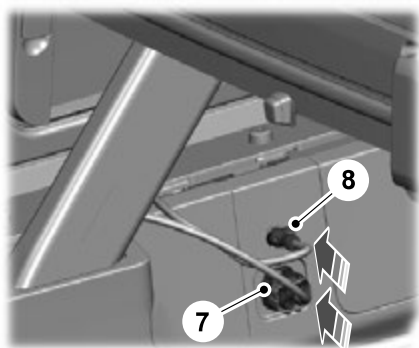
REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE REAR ROOF PANEL

Remove the front panels and center panel before removing the rear roof panel.

- Open the rear doors.
- Open the tailgate window. See **Opening and Closing the Windows** (page 80).

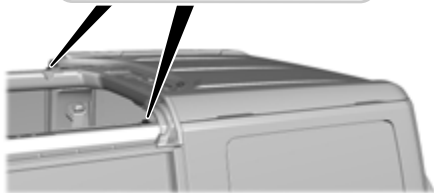
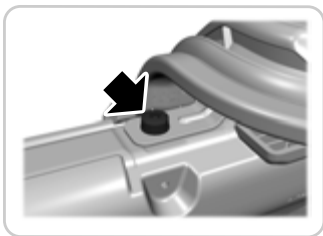


- Push the tab inward when pulling down to disconnect and remove the wiring harness.
- Push the release button on the hose connector and pull down to remove the washer hose.

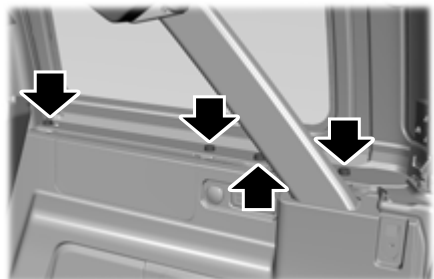


Removable Vehicle Components

7. Secure the wiring harness to the body side by plugging it into the receptacle and pushing up on the locking tab.
8. Secure the washer hose by snapping it into the top of the body side receptacle.



9. Remove the two fasteners that secure the rear roof panel at the C-pillar using the provided head driver and ratchet.



10. Remove the four fasteners on each side of your vehicle that secure the rear roof panel to the vehicle using the provided head driver and ratchet.

11. With the tailgate window open, grab the opening with one hand and slightly lift with the other hand. Lift the rear roof panel straight up and off. Place the rear roof panel on a soft surface to prevent damage.

Note: Store the rear roof panel with the tailgate window open to prevent damage to the glass seal.

12. To install, reverse the removal procedure. Torque the fasteners that secure the rear roof panel to your vehicle to 20 ± 3 Nm.

Note: Make sure the locating pins on the rear roof panel sit flush in your vehicle when installed.

Note: Do not overtighten the fasteners. You can strip the fasteners if they are overtightened.

REMOVABLE HARD TOP (IF EQUIPPED)

REMOVING AND INSTALLING THE HARD TOP

[Bronco Hard Top Removal, Storage and Reinstallation](#)



WARNING: When opening, closing, removing or installing the removable vehicle components, take care not to get your fingers or hands caught in the mechanism. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

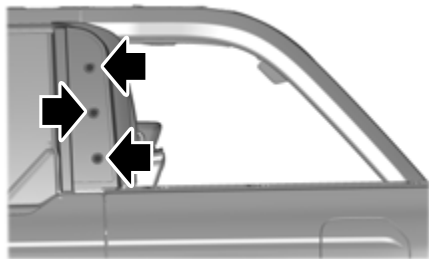
1. Remove the roof panels. See **Removable Roof Panels** (page 282).
2. To install, reverse the removal procedure.

Removable Vehicle Components

Removing the Soft Top Trim Piece

(If Equipped)

Make sure to remove the soft top trim pieces before installing the hard top.



Remove the three fasteners to the soft top trim piece on each side of your vehicle using the provided head driver and ratchet.

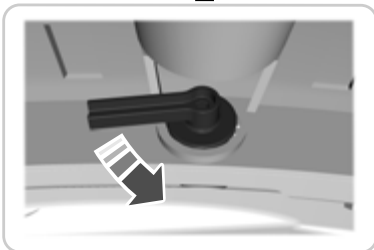
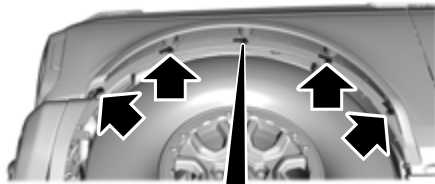
REMOVABLE FENDERS

REMOVABLE FENDER PRECAUTIONS

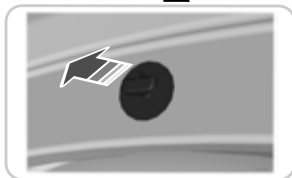
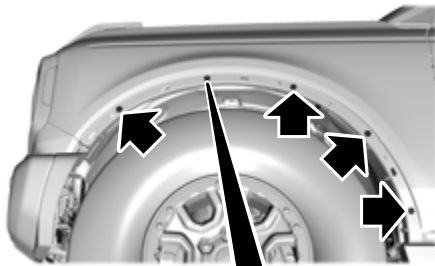


WARNING: Do not drive your vehicle on public roads with fenders removed as you will lose the protection they provide in a crash. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

REMOVING THE FENDER FLARES



1. Unlock the five quarter turn clips by turning the clips counterclockwise.

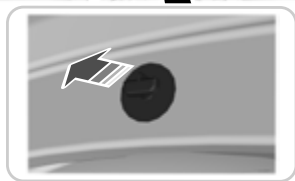
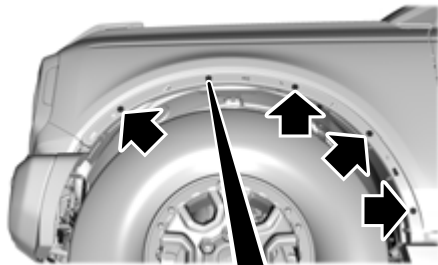


2. Pull outward on the fender flare with your hands to unseat the clips from the sheet metal.

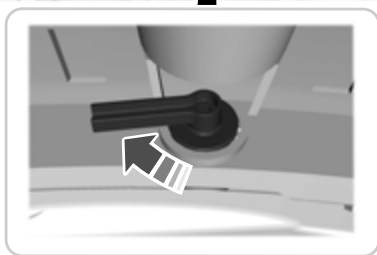
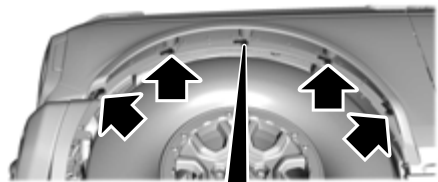
Removable Vehicle Components

Note: Clips should not be removed from fender flare.

Installing the Fender Flares



1. Press the five pushpin clips in until they are seated.



2. Lock the five quarter turn clips by turning the clips clockwise.

STORING THE DOORS AND THE ROOF PANELS



WARNING: Do not store removed doors or roof panels in vehicle without using the Ford onboard storage kit, and verifying they have been secured per instructions. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: Cargo can shift under severe vehicle use, to reduce the risk of damage, avoid high speed or extreme rock crawl off-road situations when storing the doors in the cargo area.

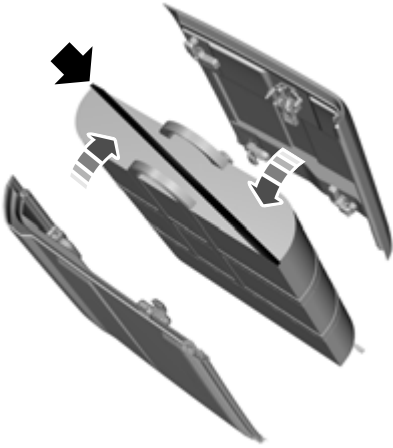
Note: Inspect the bags and harness periodically to make sure they are not damaged. Inspect the door retention harness straps to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary.

Note: Clean the roof panels and doors prior to storing them in the bags as dirt may damage the finish.

Storing the Front Roof Panels

1. Remove the front roof panels. See **Removing and Installing the Front Roof Panel** (page 282).

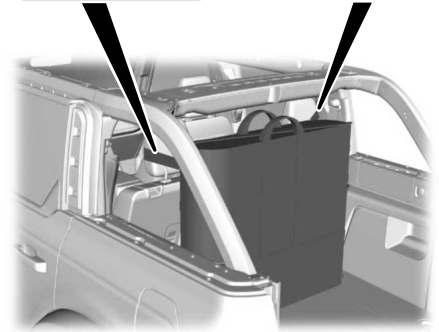
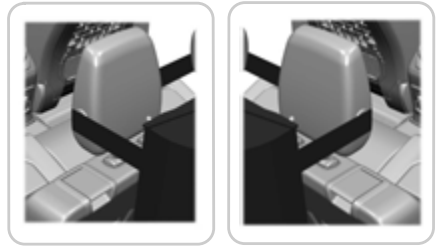
Removable Vehicle Components



2. Open the bag and pull out the divider. Place the first panel into the bag. Replace the divider before placing the second panel into the bag.
3. Zip the bag closed.
4. Gently slide the roof panel bag into the cargo area.

Securing the Front Roof Panels Vertically

1. Raise the bag to the vertical position.



2. Secure the upper roof bag strap around the rear seat headrests. Adjust the tension on the strap until it is snug.

Note: Do not overtighten the strap. This may cause damage to the headrest.

3. Secure the lower bag hooks to the forward cargo rings.

Note: Some vehicle accessories may prevent vertical storage of the panels.

Removable Vehicle Components

Securing the Front Roof Panels Horizontally



1. Install the loops through the two D-rings and secure the panels.

Note: Do not place objects on the roof panel bag to avoid damaging the panels.

Securing the Door Retention Harness



1. Install the eyebolts located in the Ford onboard storage kit into the rear cargo area pillars.



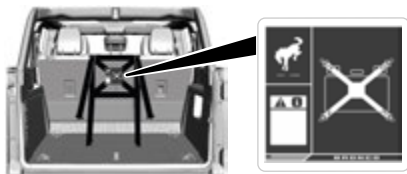
2. Use the ratchet tool provided in the kit to assist in tightening the eyebolts. The eyebolts should rest in the groove of the handle. Using the tool as a lever, apply force until fully tightened.

Removable Vehicle Components

Note: We recommend tightening the eyebolts to 17 Nm.

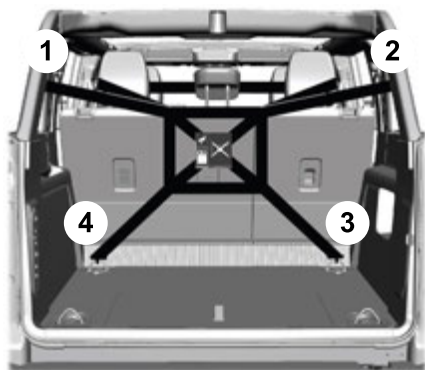
Note: The eyebolts can remain installed on the vehicle. Make sure the eyebolts are fully tightened each time they are used.

3. Fully open the tailgate and rear lift glass, or open the soft top cargo access and connect the prop rod to hold open.

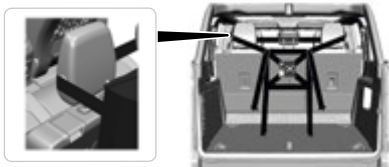


4. Install the door retention harness.

Note: Refer to harness label for image.



5. Attach upper straps 1 and 2 to the eyebolts. Attach lower straps 3 and 4 to the forward cargo rings.



6. Place the narrow strap loop over all the rear headrests and tighten until snug.

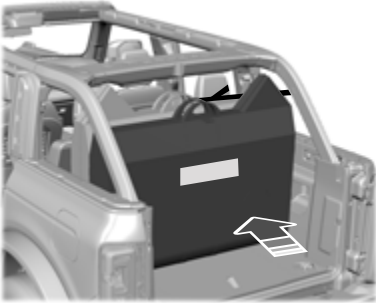
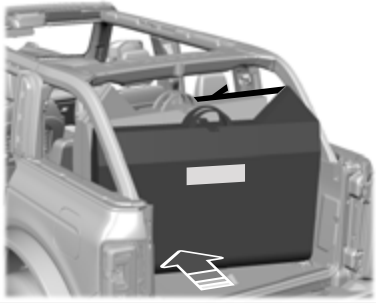
Note: Do not overtighten the strap. This may cause damage to the headrest.

7. Place the remaining harness over the seat so it is out of the way.

Storing the Front Doors

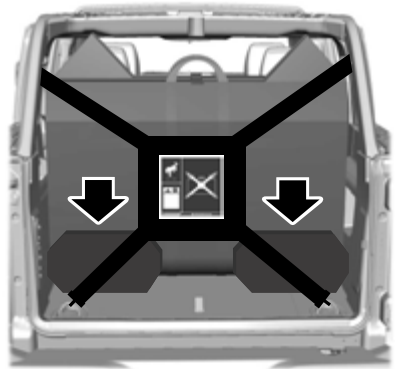
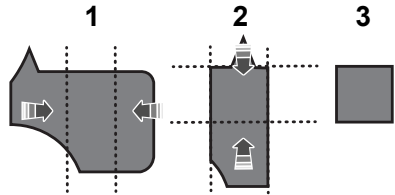
1. Adjust the seat backrest to the optimal seating position. Pull the lever up, and push the backrest rearward when storing the two front doors. This creates more space between the front door sail and the upper trim. Make sure the cargo area is clear of any other items. See **Adjusting the Seat Backrest** (page 105).
2. See Securing the Door Retention Harness earlier in this chapter and complete Steps 1-7.
3. Open the passenger side front door and install the door bag. See **Removing and Installing the Doors** (page 277).

Removable Vehicle Components



4. Zip the bag fully closed and gently place the door in the cargo area. Avoid contacting the rear pillars, speakers, striker, and trim. For soft tops, take care to avoid contacting the prop rod.
5. Slide the door into position with the bag label facing rearward. Center the door to make sure there is space between the door and cargo box trim panels.
6. Push the lower edge of the door forward until it stops to create space for the door peak.
7. Secure the door bag to the retention harness with the clip.
8. Repeat Steps 3-5 for the driver side front door. Secure the bags using the clips on the bags.

9. Lift the retention harness over the doors. Make sure the straps are straight.
10. Secure the upper straps 5 and 6 to the eyelet bolts and lower straps 7 and 8 to the rear cargo rings.
11. Tighten all adjustable straps to secure the doors.
12. To prevent the doors from moving, fold the unused rear door bags to use as a spacer and place them between the doors and lower cargo hooks as shown.

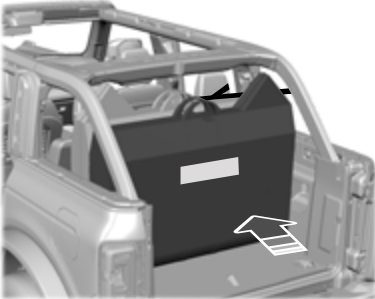


Note: The doors should not move when pressure is applied.

Removable Vehicle Components

Storing the Front Roof Panels and the Front Doors

1. Adjust the seat backrest to the optimal seating position. Pull the lever up, and push the backrest rearward when storing the two front doors. This creates more space between the front door sail and the upper trim. Make sure the cargo area is clear of any other items. See **Adjusting the Seat Backrest** (page 105).
2. See **Securing the Door Retention Harness** earlier in this chapter and complete Steps 1-7.
3. Open the passenger side front door and install the door bag. See **Removing and Installing the Doors** (page 277).



4. Zip the bag fully closed and gently place the door in the cargo area. Avoid contacting the rear pillars, speakers, striker, and trim.
5. Slide the door into position with the bag label facing rearward. Center the door to make sure there is space between the door and cargo box trim panels.
6. Push the lower edge of the door forward until it stops to create space for the door peak.
7. Secure the door bag to the retention harness with the clip.
8. Repeat Steps 3-5 for the driver side front door. Secure the bags using the clips on the bags.
9. Place the front roof panels in the bag, and then into the cargo area. See **Storing the Doors and the Roof Panels** (page 286).

Note: Do not use the roof bag retention system in this orientation. Secure the roof panels by the harness.

10. Lift the retention harness over the doors. Make sure the straps are straight.
11. Secure the upper straps 5 and 6 to the eyelet bolts and lower straps 7 and 8 to the rear cargo rings.
12. Tighten all adjustable straps to secure the doors and roof panels.

Note: The doors and roof panels should not move when pressure is applied.

Storing all Four Doors

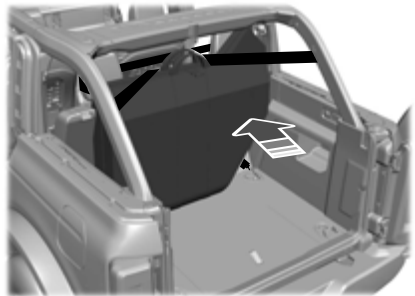
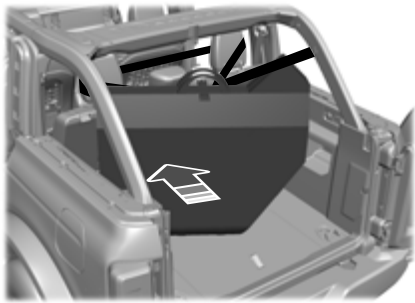
1. Adjust the rear seat backrest to the upright position and raise the center headrest to the highest position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched. Make sure the cargo area is clear of any other items. See **Adjusting the Seat Backrest** (page 105).

Removable Vehicle Components

Note: Four door storage in the cargo area will prevent the soft tops from fully retracting. Limit to the partially open position.

Note: Make sure the rear seat headrests are upright.

2. See Securing the Door Retention Harness earlier in this chapter and complete Steps 1-7.
3. Open the driver-side rear door and install the bag. See **Removing and Installing the Doors** (page 277).



4. Zip the bag fully closed and gently place the door in the cargo area. Avoid contacting the rear pillars, speakers, striker, and trim. For soft tops, take care to avoid contacting the prop rod.
5. Slide the door into position with the bag label facing rearward.

6. Align the door peak with the highest point in the upper trim.



7. Secure the door bag to the retention harness with the clip.
8. Repeat Steps 3-5 for the remaining doors. Secure the bags with the harness clips.

Note: In order to store all four doors onboard, you must store the doors in the following sequence: driver-side rear, driver-side front, passenger-side front, passenger-side rear.

9. Lift the retention harness over the doors. Make sure the straps are straight.
10. Secure the upper straps 5 and 6 to the eyelet bolts and lower straps 7 and 8 to the rear cargo rings.
11. Tighten all adjustable straps to secure the doors.

Note: The doors should not move when pressure is applied.

Note: When closing the tailgate, make sure the tailgate and glass do not strike the stowed doors.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR PRECAUTIONS

Immediately remove fuel spillages, additive residuals, bird droppings, insect deposits and road tar. These may cause damage to your vehicle's paintwork or trim over time. Remove any exterior accessories, for example antennas, before entering a car wash.

CLEANING HEADLAMPS AND REAR LAMPS

We recommend that you only use cold or lukewarm water containing car shampoo to clean the headlamps and the rear lamps.

Do not scrape the lamps.

Do not wipe lamps when they are dry.

CLEANING WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

To clean the windshield and wiper blades:

- Clean the windshield with a non-abrasive glass cleaner.

Note: *When cleaning the interior of the windshield, avoid getting any glass cleaner on the instrument panel or door panels. Wipe any glass cleaner off these surfaces immediately.*

- Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

Note: *Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. This can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

CLEANING CHROME, ALUMINIUM OR STAINLESS STEEL

We recommend that you only use a car shampoo, a soft cloth and water on bumpers and other chrome, aluminium or stainless steel parts.

Note: *For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Rinse the area well after cleaning.*

Note: *Do not use abrasive materials, for example steel wool or plastic pads, as they can scratch these surfaces.*

Note: *Do not use chrome cleaner, metal cleaner or polish on wheels or wheel covers.*

CLEANING WHEELS

Only use a recommended wheel and tire cleaner to clean the wheels weekly. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

1. Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust.
2. Rinse well after cleaning.

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before parking your vehicle. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.

Do not clean the wheels when they are hot.

Note: *Some car washes could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Using non-recommended cleaners, harsh cleaning products, chrome wheel cleaners or abrasive materials could damage wheel rims and covers.*

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove debris from the screen area below windshield.

Note: *If you are not familiar with the parts around the engine do not wash the engine compartment. Avoid frequent engine washes.*

When washing the engine compartment:

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box, and air filter assembly to prevent water damage.

Note: *If your vehicle has an engine cover remove the cover before application of shampoo and degreaser.*

- Spray an approved engine shampoo and degreaser on all parts that require cleaning and rinse with water.

CLEANING THE CONVERTIBLE TOP

Remove lint with a lint roller or vacuum with a soft bristle brush.

Wash with an approved high quality convertible top cleaner and protectant.

Note: *Do not use stiff bristle brushes, abrasive materials or household cleaning products.*

Note: *High pressure water may cause water leaks and possible seal damage to the convertible top.*

CLEANING STRIPES OR GRAPHICS

It is recommended to wash your vehicle by hand however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.
- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa.
- Do not use water hotter than 82°C.

Note: *Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.*

CLEANING CAMERA LENSES AND SENSORS

We recommend that you only use lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth to clean the camera lens and sensors.

Note: *Do not pressure wash camera lens and sensors.*

CLEANING THE HARD TOP

We recommend that you only clean the hard top in the following way:

1. Use a sponge to remove dust and loose dirt on the hard top surface.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the surface of your hard top is dry before applying a small amount of conditioner or spray wax.
4. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Vehicle Care

Note: Test any conditioner or spray wax on an inconspicuous area before applying broadly.

Note: Do not use alcohol containing cleaner or any type of solvent on the hard top surface.

Note: Do not use power tools, paste wax or polish on the hard top surface.

CLEANING THE UNDERBODY

Regularly clean the underside of your vehicle using water. Keep body and door drain holes free of debris or foreign material.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

CLEANING THE INSTRUMENT PANEL



WARNING: Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the airbag system.

We recommend that you only clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a damp soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Note: Avoid cleaners or polishes that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect you from undesirable windshield reflection.

CLEANING PLASTIC

We recommend that you only use a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

CLEANING DISPLAYS AND SCREENS

We recommend that you only use a microfiber cloth in a circular motion to clean off the fingerprint or dust.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

Note: Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

CLEANING FABRIC



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean fabric in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

Vehicle Care

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not oversaturate or the ring could set.

CLEANING LEATHER



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean the leather surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. Make sure the leather is dry, then apply a small amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth.
4. Rub the conditioner into the leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry, then repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe it off with a dry, clean cloth.
5. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING VINYL



WARNING: On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

We recommend that you only clean vinyl surfaces in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

CLEANING CARPETS AND FLOOR MATS

We recommend that you only clean your carpets in the following way:

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
3. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

For heavy stains, spot clean the area. If a ring forms on the fabric, clean the entire area immediately, but do not over-saturate or the ring could set.

We recommend that you only clean your floor mats in the following way:

Vehicle Care

1. Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wash rubber floor mats using mild soap and lukewarm or cold water.
3. Completely dry the floor mat before placing them back in your vehicle.

Cleaning Rubber Floors

1. Remove the floor mats prior to washing out. See **Floor Mats** (page 243).

Note: *Prior to washing out, remove large debris to prevent clogging the drain.*

2. Turn active drain plugs in each passenger compartment counterclockwise to open.
3. Wash out debris using a standard garden style hose.

Note: *Use caution to not spray seats, console, door interior, electrical connections, instrument cluster display and underside of the instrument panel on both driver and passenger sides.*

4. Wipe out remaining water or debris from the floor.
5. Install active drain plugs and turn clockwise to close.
6. Reinstall floor mats.

CLEANING SEATBELTS



WARNING: Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

1. Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

We recommend that you contact an authorized dealer to identify your vehicle color code. Authorized dealers have touch-up paint to match your vehicle's color.

Before repairing minor paint damage, use a cleaner to remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout.

Read the instructions before using cleaning products.

WAXING YOUR VEHICLE

Wax the high-gloss painted surface of your prewashed vehicle once or twice a year.

We recommend that you only use an approved quality wax that does not contain abrasives. Follow the manufacturer's instructions to apply and remove the wax. For additional information and assistance, we recommend that you contact an authorized dealer.

When washing and waxing, park your vehicle in a shaded area out of direct sunlight.

Note: *Avoid waxing unpainted or low-gloss black colored parts, they discolor over time.*

Storing Your Vehicle

PREPARING YOUR VEHICLE FOR STORAGE

If you plan on storing your vehicle for 30 days or more, the following maintenance recommendations ensures your vehicle stays in good operating condition.

Under various conditions, long-term storage may lead to degraded engine performance or failure unless you use specific precautions to preserve your vehicle.

General

- Store all vehicles in a dry, ventilated place.
- If vehicles are stored outside, they require regular maintenance to protect against rust and weather damage.
- Make sure all linkages, cables, levers and pins under your vehicle are covered with grease to prevent rust.
- Move vehicles at least 7.5 m every 15 days to lubricate working parts and prevent corrosion.
- Fill the fuel tank with high-quality fuel until the first automatic shutoff of the fuel pump nozzle.

Engine

- Change the engine oil and filter prior to storage because used engine oil contains contaminants which may cause engine damage.
- Start the engine every 15 days for a minimum of 15 minutes. Run at fast idle with the climate controls set to defrost until the engine reaches normal operating temperature.
- With your foot on the brake, shift through all the gears while the engine is running.

Body

- Wash your vehicle thoroughly to remove dirt, grease, oil, tar or mud from exterior surfaces, rear wheel housings and the underside of front fenders.
- Periodically wash your vehicle if it is stored in exposed locations.
- Touch-up exposed or primed metal to prevent rust.
- Cover chrome and stainless steel parts with a thick coat of auto wax to prevent discoloration. Rewax as necessary when you wash your vehicle.
- Lubricate all hood, door and luggage compartment hinges and latches with a light grade oil.
- Cover interior trim to prevent fading.
- Keep all rubber parts free from oil and solvents.

12 Volt Battery

- When storing your vehicle for greater than 30 days the state of charge should be approximately 50%. Additionally, we recommend disconnecting the 12v battery which will reduce system loads on the battery.
- Check and recharge as necessary. Keep connections clean.

Note: *It is necessary to reset memory features if you disconnect the battery cables.*

Brakes

Make sure the brakes and parking brake release fully.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so to reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Storing Your Vehicle

Tires

Maintain recommended air pressure.

Note: *If you intend on parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This reduces the risk of corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Contact an authorized dealer if you have any concerns or issues.

REMOVING YOUR VEHICLE FROM STORAGE

When your vehicle is ready to come out of storage, do the following:

- We recommend that you change the engine oil before you use your vehicle again.
- Wash your vehicle to remove any dirt or grease film build-up on window surfaces.
- Check windshield wipers for any deterioration.
- Check the underhood for any foreign materials such as mice or squirrel nests.
- Check the exhaust for any foreign materials.
- Check tire pressures and set tire inflation per the Tire Label.
- Check brake pedal operation. Corroded brake rotors could cause brake noise. Drive your vehicle and gently apply and release the brakes repeatedly over a 10-minute drive to reduce the corrosion from the brakes.
- Check fluid levels (including coolant, oil and gas) to make sure there are no leaks, and fluids are at recommended levels.
- If you remove the battery, clean the battery cable ends and check for damage.

Wheel and Tire Information

LOCATING THE TIRE LABEL

You will find a Tire Label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.

USING SNOW CHAINS



WARNING: Do not exceed 50 km/h. Failure to follow this instruction could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, personal injury or death.



WARNING: Do not use snow chains on snow-free roads.



WARNING: Only fit snow chains to specified tires.



WARNING: If your vehicle is fitted with wheel trims, remove them before fitting snow chains.



WARNING: If you choose to install snow tires on your vehicle, they must be the same size, construction, and load range as the original tires listed on the tire placard, and they must be installed on all four wheels. Mixing tires of different size or construction on your vehicle can adversely affect your vehicle's handling and braking, and may lead to loss of vehicle control.

Only use snow chains on rear wheels. Install snow chains in pairs. Do not use self-tensioning snow chains.

Only use snow chains on the following specified tire sizes:

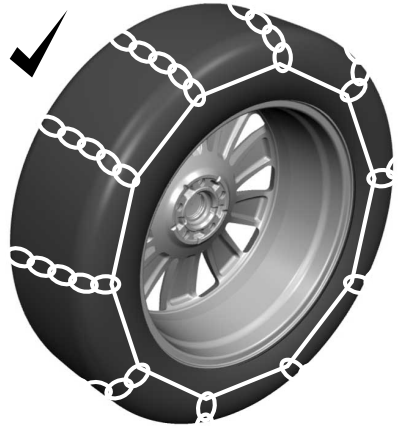
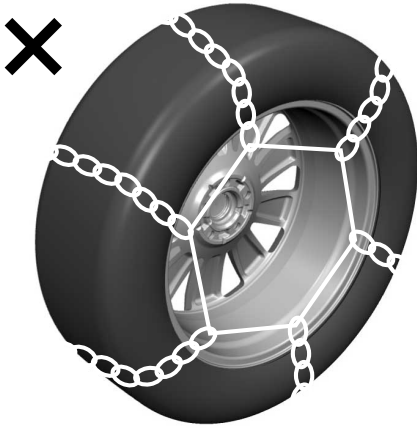
- 255/70R16
 - Only install chains that are 15 mm or less.
- 255/75R17
 - Only install chains that are 15 mm or less.

We recommend you use steel wheels of the same size and specification if snow chains are required because chains may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and traction devices:

- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Purchase snow chains from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- When driving with snow chains do not exceed 50 km/h or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer, whichever is less.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the snow chains rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and tighten them. If this does not work, remove the snow chains to prevent vehicle damage.
- Remove the snow chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use snow chains on dry roads.
- If a temporary spare wheel is mounted on your vehicle, do not use snow chains on the axle with the temporary spare wheel.

Wheel and Tire Information



Use snow chains that fit against the sidewall of the tire to prevent the chains from touching the wheel rims or suspension, see following illustration above.

If you have any questions regarding snow chains, please contact your authorized dealer.

Tire Care

CHECKING THE TIRE PRESSURES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Every day before you drive, check your tires.

At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge. Inflate all tires to the recommended inflation pressure. See **Inflating the Tires** (page 302).

INFLATING THE TIRES



WARNING: Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or blowout, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

Inflate your tires to the recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. You can find the tire label with the recommended tire inflation pressure next to the tire size on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door.

The recommended tire inflation pressure is also found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label, affixed to either the door hinge pillar, door-latch post, or the door edge that meets the door-latch on the B-pillar, or on the edge of the driver door.

Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Tire Care

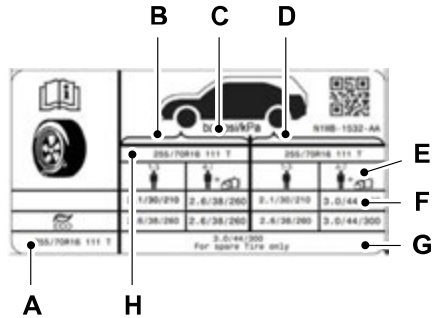
TIRE PRESSURE SPECIFICATIONS



WARNING: Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size, load index, speed rating, and type as those originally provided for your vehicle. The recommended tire and wheel sizes can be found on the Tire Label on the driver side door frame or the edge of the driver door. If this information is not found in those locations, or for additional options, contact your authorized dealer. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended, could affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

The recommended tire inflation pressures are located on the tire information label on the driver side B-pillar.

Check all tire pressures, including the spare, when they are cold, at least once every two weeks.



- A Spare wheel tire size.
- B Front tire pressure.
- C Measure unit.
- D Rear tire pressure.
- E Vehicle load.
- F Tire pressure.
- G Spare wheel tire pressure.
- H Tire size.

Tire Size	Normal Load		Full Load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
	bar	bar	bar	bar
255/70R16 111 T	2.4	2.4	2.4	2.4
255/75R17 115 T	2.4	2.4	2.4	2.4
255/70R18 112 T	2.4	2.4	2.4	2.4
LT265/70R17 112 T	2.7	2.7	2.7	2.7
LT285/70R17 116 S	2.7	2.7	2.7	2.7
LT315/70R17 113 S	2.7	2.7	2.7	2.7

Note: See the tire information label for applicable tire pressure and size.

Snow chains can be fitted to a 255/70R16 and a 255/75R17 on the rear axle only.

Tire Care

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR WEAR



When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove objects such as stones, nails or glass that may be wedged in the tread grooves.

INSPECTING THE TIRE FOR DAMAGE

Inspect the tire sidewalls for cracking, cuts, bruises and other signs of damage or excessive wear. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire dismantled and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged or show signs of excessive wear should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail.

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage, such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall. If damage is observed or suspected, have the tire inspected by a tire professional.

Safety Practices



WARNING: If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud or sand, do not rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.



WARNING: Do not spin the wheels at over 55 km/h. The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Tire Care

Highway Hazards

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you could eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This could further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove the wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and Wheel Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you are driving, the wheels could be out of alignment. Have an authorized dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by an authorized dealer.

INSPECTING THE WHEEL VALVE STEMS

Check the valve stems for holes, cracks, or cuts that could permit air leakage.

TIRE ROTATION



WARNING: If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system, then you need to update the settings for the system sensors. Always perform the system reset procedure after tire rotation. If you do not reset the system, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Note: *If your tires show uneven wear ask an authorized dealer to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.*

Note: *After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.*

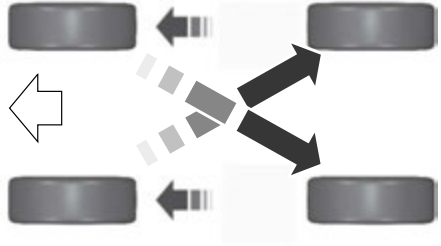
Tire Care

Rotating your tires at the recommended interval, as indicated in the scheduled maintenance chapter, will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life.

For the best tire life, a five tire rotation is recommended that includes the matching spare tire mounted on the back of the vehicle. This rotation requires a forced re-learning of your tire pressure monitor system sensors by your vehicle, and should be performed by an authorized dealer or a service center to make sure the tire pressure monitoring system provides proper warning at all times. When performing the tire rotation yourself, a four tire rotation is recommended, without using the spare tire in the rotation, so that no tire pressure monitor system sensor re-learn is required. If a five tire rotation is performed without a tire pressure monitor system sensor re-learn, the system may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary.

Keep in mind that a spare tire that is not used in the tire rotation should only be used temporarily in the event of a flat tire, not as a permanent replacement. The spare tire should always be replaced if it exceeds 6 years of age, regardless of whether it is part of the tire rotation.

Rear-wheel drive vehicles and four-wheel drive vehicles with four tire rotation, front tires at left of diagram.



Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

WHAT IS THE TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

[Tire Pressure Monitoring System with Individual Tire Pressure Display](#)



The tire pressure monitoring system measures the vehicle's tire pressures. A warning lamp illuminates if one or more tires are significantly underinflated or if there is a system malfunction.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



WARNING: Do not use the tire pressure displayed in the information display as a tire pressure gauge. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Note: The use of tire sealants can damage the tire pressure monitoring system.

Note: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM LIMITATIONS

When the outside temperature drops significantly, the tire pressure could decrease and activate the low tire pressure warning lamp.

The warning lamp could also illuminate when you use a spare wheel, or tire sealant from the inflator kit.

Note: Regularly checking the vehicle tire pressures can reduce the possibility for the warning lamp to illuminate due to outside air temperature changes.

Note: After you inflate the tires to the recommended pressure it could take up to two minutes of driving over 32 km/h for the warning indicator to turn off.

VIEWING THE TIRE PRESSURES



Using the instrument cluster display arrow keys navigate to the truck info section where you can view the tire pressures.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – TROUBLESHOOTING



The low tire pressure warning lamp has combined functions, as it warns you when your tires need air, and when the system is no longer capable of functioning as intended.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – WARNING LAMPS

Warning Lamp	Possible Cause	Action Required
Solid warning lamp	One or more tires are significantly under inflated	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h before the light turns off.
Solid warning lamp or flashing warning lamp	Temporary spare wheel in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit it to your vehicle to restore operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are inflated to the recommended tire pressures and the temporary spare wheel is not in use, the system detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM – INFORMATION MESSAGES

Message	Action
Tyre pressure low	After inflating your tires to the manufacturer's recommended pressure as shown on the tire label, on the edge of the driver door or the B-pillar, drive your vehicle for at least two minutes over 32 km/h before the light turns off.
Tyre pressure monitor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Tyre pressure sensor malfunction	The system has detected a fault that requires service or a spare tire is in use. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE


Note: You should only use tire sealants in roadside emergencies as they may cause damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensor.

Note: The tire pressure monitoring system indicator light illuminates when the spare tire is in use. To restore the full function of the monitoring system, all road wheels equipped with tire pressure monitoring sensors must be mounted on the vehicle.


If you get a flat tire when driving, do not apply the brake heavily. Instead, gradually decrease your speed, hold the steering wheel firmly, and slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.


Have your flat serviced by an authorized dealer in order to prevent damage to the tire pressure monitoring system sensors. Replace the spare tire with a road tire as soon as possible. During repairing or replacing of the flat tire, have the authorized dealer inspect the tire pressure monitoring system sensor for damage.


Tire Change Procedure


 **WARNING:** Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

 **WARNING:** Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

 **WARNING:** The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing a flat tire in an emergency. Do not attempt to do any other work on your vehicle when it is supported by the jack, as your vehicle could slip off the jack. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.


 **WARNING:** To help prevent your vehicle from moving when changing a wheel, shift the transmission into park (P), set the parking brake and use an appropriate block or wheel chock to secure the wheel diagonally opposite to the wheel being changed. For example, when changing the front left wheel, place an appropriate block or wheel chock on the right rear wheel.


 **WARNING:** Only use the jack provided as original equipment with your vehicle.


 **WARNING:** Only use the specified jacking points. If you use any other locations you could damage vehicle components, such as brake lines.

 **WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.

 **WARNING:** Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.

 **WARNING:** Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to not obstruct the flow of traffic and avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.

 **WARNING:** Always fully apply the parking brake. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 **WARNING:** The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.

Changing a Road Wheel

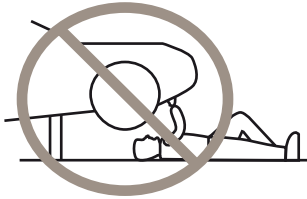


WARNING: It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.

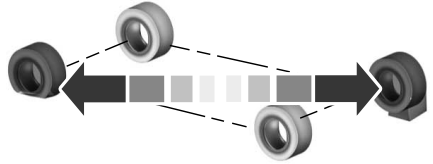
Note: Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.

Note: Jack at the specified locations to avoid damage to the vehicle.

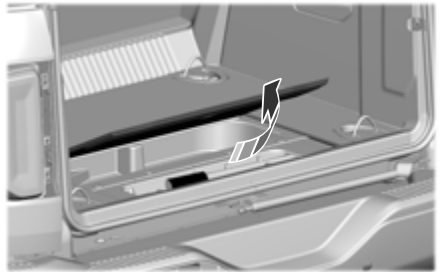
Note: No maintenance or additional lubrication of your jack is required over the service life of your vehicle.



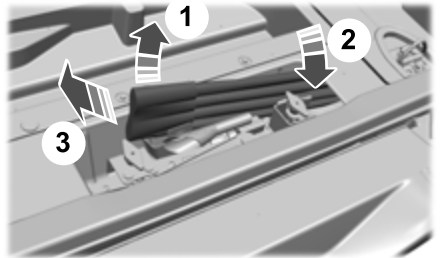
1. Park the vehicle on a level, firm surface and activate the hazard flashers.
2. Apply the parking brake, and place the transmission in park (P) for an automatic transmission or reverse (R) for a manual transmission and turn the engine off.
3. Block the wheel diagonally opposite of the flat tire. For example, if the left front is flat, block the right rear wheel.



4. Find the jack and tool kit in the rear trunk of the vehicle. Turn the jack retainer counterclockwise to remove the jack and jack extension block.



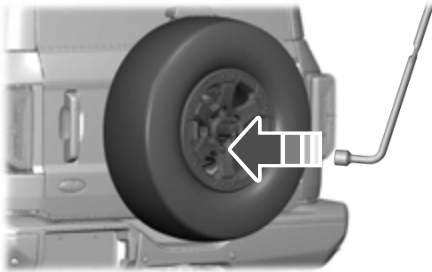
5. Remove the tool bag.



Changing a Road Wheel

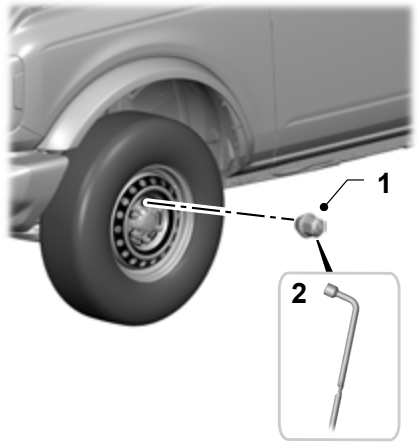
6. Remove the lug wrench from the tool bag. Turn the spare tire fasteners counterclockwise starting with the lowest first, and remove the spare tire from the rear of the vehicle.

Note: Insert the wheel lock key into the wheel lock nut before using the lug wrench to loosen the lock nut.

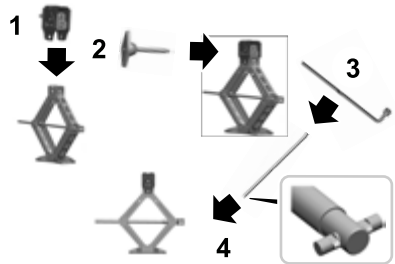


Note: Do not lay the wheel face down on the ground, as there is a risk of scratching or marring the wheel if laid down on an uneven surface.

7. Loosen each road wheel nut a half a turn counterclockwise, do not remove them until the flat tire is raised off the ground.

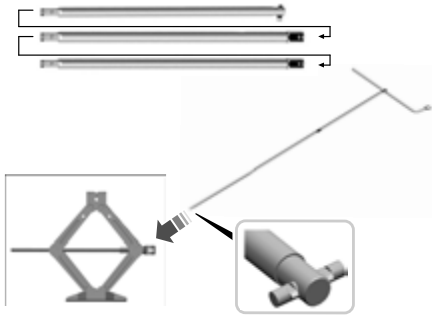


8. When you are changing a flat front tire, connect the extension block to the jack loadrest using the wing bolt as shown. Connect the jack handle to the jack, and use the lug nut wrench to operate the jack.

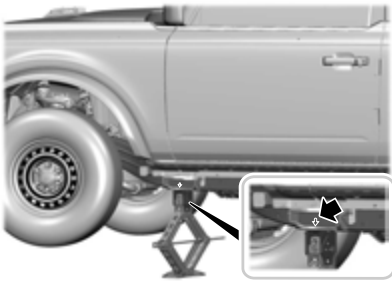


9. Do not use the extension block when you are changing a flat tire on the rear axle of the vehicle. Assemble the jack handle using the extensions as shown to operate the jack when placing under the rear axle.

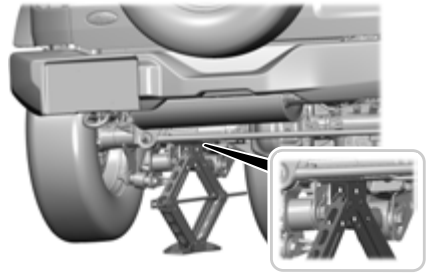
Changing a Road Wheel



10. The front jacking point location is indicated by an arrow-shaped mark on the frame.



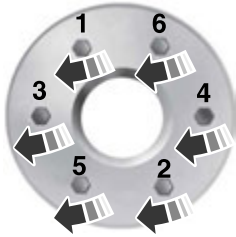
11. Use the rear axle tube for the rear jacking point.



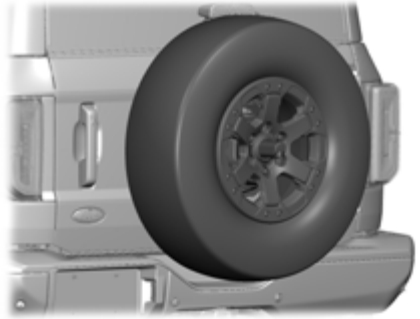
Note: Only use the jack on the specified jacking points and as close to the affected wheel as possible.

12. Place the jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tire you are changing. Turn the lug wrench handle clockwise until the flat tire is completely off the ground.
13. Remove the wheel nuts with the wheel nut wrench.
14. Replace the flat tire with the spare wheel. Make sure the wheel is on with the valve stem facing outward.
15. Install the wheel nuts snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the wheel nuts until the vehicle is lowered back onto the ground.
16. Turn the wrench handle counterclockwise to lower the jack.
17. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown below.

Changing a Road Wheel



18. Stow the flat tire on the rear of the vehicle and fully tighten the securing nuts.



Note: We recommend that you use a torque wrench to make sure you tighten all the securing wheel nuts on the spare wheel carrier to the required 55 Nm specification.

19. Remove the wheel blocks.
20. Stow the jack and tools in the original locations shown in the removal section and tighten the retaining screws by turning clockwise.

Changing a Road Wheel

WHEEL NUTS

Wheel Nut Torque Specifications

⚠ WARNING: When you install a wheel, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the wheel hub, brake drum or brake disc that contacts the wheel. Make sure to secure any fasteners that attach the rotor to the hub so they do not interfere with the mounting surfaces of the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while your vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of vehicle control, personal injury or death.

⚠ WARNING: If the tire pressure monitor sensor becomes damaged it may not function.

Bolt size	Nm *
M12 X 1.5	135 Nm

*Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only our recommended replacement fasteners.

Retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque within 160 km after any wheel disturbance (such as tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal).



A Wheel pilot bore

Inspect the wheel pilot bore and mounting surface prior to installation. Remove any visible corrosion or loose particles.

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 2.7L ECOBOOST™

Engine	Specification
Compression ratio.	10.0:1
Displacement.	2,700 cm ³
Firing order.	1-4-2-5-3-6
Ignition system.	Coil on plug
Spark plug gap.	0.7 mm - 0.8 mm

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

Outer Banks

Dimension Description	Specification
Maximum length including license plate brackets.	4,811 mm
Overall width excluding mirrors.	1,928 mm
Overall height-on road.	1,852 mm
Overall height-with roof rack.	1,938 mm
Wheelbase.	2,950 mm

Badlands

Dimension Description	Specification
Maximum length including license plate brackets.	4,800 mm
Overall width excluding mirrors.	1,937 mm
Overall height-on road.	1,962 mm
Wheelbase.	2,950 mm

Capacities and Specifications

FUEL CONSUMPTION FIGURES

WLTP

Low	Medium	High	Extra-High	Combined	CO₂ Emissions
L/100 km	L/100 km	L/100 km	L/100 km	L/100 km	g/km
TBD	TBD	TBD	TBD	TBD	TBD

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE OIL CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.7L ECOBOOST™

Use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use oil that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Longer engine cranking periods.

- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced vehicle performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.

We recommend Motorcraft motor oil for your vehicle. If Motorcraft oil is not available, use motor oils of the recommended viscosity grade that display the ACEA C2 or API SP certification mark for gasoline engines.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.

Capacities

Variant	Including the Oil Filter
All.	6.6 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 0W-30	WSS-M2C950-A

COOLING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION - 2.7L ECOBOOST™

Use coolant that meets the defined specification.

If you do not use coolant that meets the defined specification, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	11.7 L

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B57-A2

FUEL TANK CAPACITY

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
Long wheelbase.	80 L

Capacities and Specifications

AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION



WARNING: The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening

the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications.

If you do not use refrigerant and oil that meets the defined specifications, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Refrigerant
All.	0.55 kg

Materials

Name	Specification
Refrigerant - R-1234yf	WSS-M17B21-A
Refrigerant Oil	WSS-M2C300-A2

WASHER FLUID SPECIFICATION

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Windshield Washer Fluid	WSS-M8B18-A2

Capacities and Specifications

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Fluid	WSS-M2C949-A, MERCON® ULV

Note: Only use transmission fluid that conforms to the defined specification. Use of other fluids could result in vehicle damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

BRAKE FLUID SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced brake performance.

Note: We recommend you use Dot 4 Low Viscosity (LV) High Performance Brake Fluid meeting WSS-M6C65-A2 specifications or ISO 4925 Class 6 standards. If you use any fluid other than the recommended fluid, it could cause reduced brake performance and not meet our performance standards. Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials could result in brake system damage and possible failure.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
All.	Fill as required.

Materials

Name	Specification
Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2

Capacities and Specifications

TRANSFER CASE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
4x4 with part time engagement.	1.2 L
Advanced 4x4 with 4A mode.	1.55 L

Materials

Name	Specification
Automatic Transmission Fluid	WSS-M2C938-A MERCON® LV,

FRONT AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
With electronic locking differential.	775 ± 25 ml
Without electronic locking differential and without front axle disconnect.	865 ± 25 ml
Without electronic locking differential and with front axle disconnect.	900 ± 25 ml

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Gear/Transmission Fluid - SAE 80W-90	WSP-M2C197-A

REAR AXLE FLUID CAPACITY AND SPECIFICATION

Use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade.

If you do not use fluid that meets the defined specification and viscosity grade, it could result in:

- Component damage that your vehicle warranty does not cover.
- Reduced vehicle performance.

Capacities

Variant	Quantity
With electronic locking differential.	1.88 L
Without electronic locking differential.	1.93 L

Materials

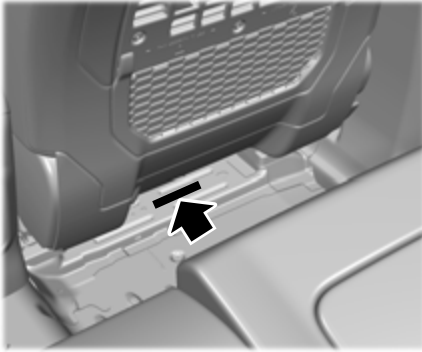
Name	Specification
Gear/Transmission Fluid - SAE 75W-85	WSS-M2C942-A

Vehicle Identification

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION NUMBER

The vehicle identification number is stamped into the floor panel on the right-hand side, under the front seat.

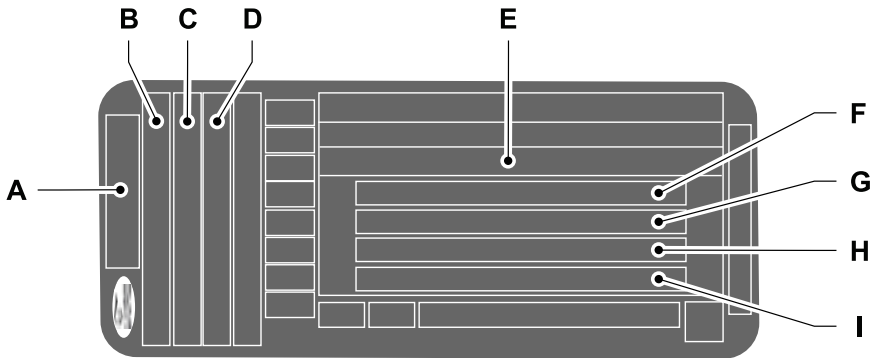


VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

LOCATING THE VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

The vehicle identification plate is within the right-hand door aperture.

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE OVERVIEW



Vehicle Identification

- A Model.
- B Variant.
- C Engine designation.
- D Engine power and emission level.
- E Vehicle identification number.
- F Gross vehicle weight.
- G Gross train weight.
- H Maximum front axle weight.
- I Maximum rear axle weight.

Note: *The vehicle identification plate may vary to that shown.*

Note: *Information on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.*

Connected Vehicle

WHAT IS A CONNECTED VEHICLE

A connected vehicle has technology that allows your vehicle to connect to a mobile network and for you to access a range of features. When used in conjunction with the FordPass app, it could allow you to monitor and control your vehicle further, for example checking the tire pressures, the fuel level and the vehicle location. For additional information, refer to the local Ford website.

CONNECTED VEHICLE REQUIREMENTS

Connected service and related feature functionality requires a compatible vehicle network.

Some remote features require additional service activation. Log in to your Ford account for details. Some restrictions, third party terms and message or data rates may apply.

CONNECTED VEHICLE LIMITATIONS

Evolving technology, cellular networks, or regulations could affect functionality and availability, or continued provision of some features. These changes could even stop some features from functioning.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A MOBILE NETWORK

WHAT IS THE MODEM



The modem allows access to a range of features built into your vehicle.

ENABLING AND DISABLING THE MODEM

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **Connectivity**.
3. Press **Connected Vehicle Features**.
4. Switch vehicle connectivity on or off.

CONNECTING FORDPASS TO THE MODEM

1. Make sure that the modem is enabled using the vehicle settings menu.
2. Open the FordPass app on your device and log in.
3. Add your vehicle or select your vehicle if already added.
4. Select the option to activate your vehicle.
5. Make sure that the name on the screen matches the name shown in your FordPass account.
6. Confirm that FordPass account is connected to the modem.

CONNECTING THE VEHICLE TO A WI-FI NETWORK



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Connectivity**.
2. Press **Manage Wi-Fi Networks**.
3. Switch **Wi-Fi** on.
4. Press **View available networks**.
5. Select an available Wi-Fi network.

Note: Enter the network password to connect to a secure network.

Connected Vehicle

CONNECTED VEHICLE – TROUBLESHOOTING

CONNECTED VEHICLE – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not confirm the connection of my FordPass account to the modem?

- The modem is not enabled. Switch vehicle connectivity on.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

Why can I not connect to a Wi-Fi network?

- You entered the wrong network password. Enter the correct password.
- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- There are multiple access points in range with the same network name. Choose a unique name for your network. Do not use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, for example as part of the MAC address.

Why does the Wi-Fi connection disconnect after successful connection?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.

What can I do if I am close to a Wi-Fi router but the network signal strength is weak?

- If your vehicle has a heated windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the Wi-Fi router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows but not on the windshield, position your vehicle so that the windshield is facing the Wi-Fi router or open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle has metallic tinting on the windows and the windshield, open the windows that are facing the router.
- If your vehicle is in a garage and you have the garage door closed, open the garage door as it could block the signal.

Why can I not see a network I expect to see in the list of available networks?

- The network is hidden. Make the network visible and try again, or manually add a network in the Wi-Fi settings menu.

Why do software downloads take too long?

- The network signal is weak. Move your vehicle closer to the Wi-Fi router or to a place where the network signal is not obstructed.
- Wi-Fi network is in high demand or has a slow Internet connection. Use a more reliable Wi-Fi network.

Why does the software not update when the system seems to connect to a Wi-Fi network and the signal strength is excellent?

- No software update is available at this time.
- Select automatic updates option in the settings menu to enable automatic software update or contact an authorized dealer.
- There could be a connection problem. Test the network using another device.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

CREATING A VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT

You can create a Wi-Fi hotspot in your vehicle and allow devices to connect to it for access to the Internet.



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.

Note: The vehicle hotspot default setting is on.

2. Press **Settings**.
3. Press **Edit**.
4. Press **Hotspot visibility**.

Note: The hotspot visibility default setting is on.

Finding the Wi-Fi Hotspot Name and Password



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
2. Press **Settings**.

Note: The network name is the hotspot name.

3. Press **View password**.

Connecting a Device to the Wi-Fi Hotspot

1. On your device, switch Wi-Fi on and select the hotspot from the list of available Wi-Fi networks.
2. When prompted, enter the password.

Purchasing a Data Plan

1. Connect a device to the hotspot.

Note: The vehicle network carrier's portal opens on your device.

2. If the portal does not open on your device, open a website and it redirects to the vehicle network carrier's portal.

Note: Secure websites do not redirect.

3. Follow the instructions on the carrier portal to purchase a plan.

Note: If you have an active plan, the system does not redirect to the vehicle network carrier's portal when you connect a device. Visit the vehicle network carrier's website to purchase more data.

Note: If data usage information is available in the vehicle hotspot menu, it is approximate.

Note: If you carry out a master reset, the system does not remove your vehicle from your vehicle network carrier's account. To remove your vehicle from the account, contact your vehicle network carrier.

Note: The vehicle network carrier provides Vehicle Hotspot services, subject to your vehicle network carrier agreement, coverage and availability.

CHANGING THE VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT NAME OR PASSWORD



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
2. Press **Settings**.
3. Press **Edit**.
4. Press **Change Network Name**.
5. Enter your required network name.
6. Press **Done**.
7. Press **Change password**.
8. Enter your required password.
9. Press **Done**.

Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot

Changing the Wi-Fi Hotspot Frequency

Note: *The vehicle hotspot frequency band is selectable depending upon your device capabilities. You will not be able to connect your device to the vehicle hotspot if it does not support the selected frequency band.*



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Vehicle Hotspot**.
2. Press **Settings**.
3. Press **Edit**.
4. Select a frequency.

VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – TROUBLESHOOTING


VEHICLE WI-FI HOTSPOT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why can I not see the Wi-Fi hotspot name when I search for Wi-Fi networks on my cell phone or other device?

- Make sure Wi-Fi hotspot visibility is on.
- The system does not provide a Wi-Fi hotspot at this time.
- Check what frequency the hotspot is transmitting in the vehicle hotspot settings menu. If the frequency is 5 GHz and your device cannot see the network, change the frequency to 2.4 GHz.

Audio System

AUDIO SYSTEM PRECAUTIONS

 **WARNING:** Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Listening to loud audio for long periods of time could damage your hearing.

IDENTIFYING THE AUDIO UNIT



Depending on your vehicle options, the controls may look different from what you see here.

SWITCHING THE AUDIO UNIT ON AND OFF



Press the button on the volume control.

SELECTING THE AUDIO SOURCE

Audio Unit



Press to open the media source menu.

You can press this multiple times to change the audio source or scroll through the media sources.

Touchscreen

Press **Sources** on the touchscreen to open the media source menu.

PLAYING OR PAUSING THE AUDIO SOURCE

Audio Unit



Press the button to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

Touchscreen

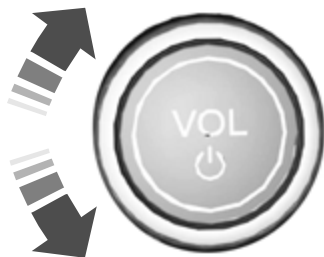


Press the button to pause playback. Press again to resume playback.

Note: *Not all sources can be paused.*

Audio System

ADJUSTING THE VOLUME



Turn to adjust the volume.

Some vehicles may be able to adjust the volume using buttons on the steering wheel.

SWITCHING SHUFFLE MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch shuffle mode on or off.

Note: *Not all sources have shuffle mode.*

SWITCHING REPEAT MODE ON AND OFF



Press the button on the touchscreen to switch repeat mode on or off.

Note: *Not all sources have repeat mode.*

SETTING A MEMORY PRESET

1. Select a station or channel.
2. Press and hold a memory preset button on the touchscreen.

Note: *The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the preset and returns once it is stored.*

Note: *You can save presets from multiple sources to the memory preset bar.*

MUTING THE AUDIO



Press the button on the steering wheel to mute the audio.



Press to mute the signal. Press again to restore the signal.

ADJUSTING THE SOUND SETTINGS

Balance and Fade (if Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Balance/Fade**.
4. Press the arrows to adjust the settings.

Tone Settings

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Tone Settings**.
4. Press the arrows or slider bar to adjust the settings.

Speed Compensated Volume

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Adaptive Volume**.

Audio System

4. Press a setting.

Occupancy Mode (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **DSP Occupancy**.
4. Press a setting.

Sound Mode (If Equipped)

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Sound settings**.
3. Press **Sound Mode**.
4. Press a setting.

SETTING THE CLOCK AND DATE

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Set the time.

Note: The **AM** and **PM** options are not available if **24-hour mode** is on.

Switching Automatic Time Updates On and Off

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Clock settings**.
3. Switch **Auto Time Update** on or off.

AM/FM RADIO

AM/FM RADIO LIMITATIONS

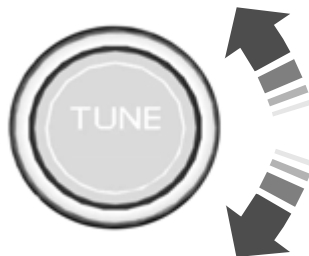
The further you travel from an AM or FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.

Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.

When you pass a ground-based broadcast repeating tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and result in the audio system muting.

SELECTING A RADIO STATION

Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Turn to search through the radio frequency band.

Using Direct Tune

1. Press **Frequency** to open the number pad.
2. Enter the station you prefer.

Note: You can only enter a valid station for the audio source you are currently listening to.

Audio System

Using Seek



Press either button. The system stops at the first station it finds in that direction.



SWITCHING THE DISPLAY ON AND OFF

Audio Unit



Press the button.

Touchscreen

To switch the display off:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Display settings**.
3. Press **Display off**.

Note: *The display defaults to on each time you switch your vehicle on.*

To switch the display on, press anywhere on the touchscreen.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

WHAT IS DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) is a digital radio standard for broadcasting digital audio radio services. Your radio allows you to listen to DAB radio stations.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO LIMITATIONS

Coverage differs from region to region and influences the quality of reception. It is broadcast nationwide, regionally and locally. Coverage may vary on weather conditions and terrain.

Note: *This could cause the audio to dropout.*

WHAT IS SERVICE LINKING

If you leave the coverage area of a DAB radio station the system switches to the corresponding FM radio station if one is available.

SWITCHING SERVICE LINKING ON AND OFF

1. Access the vehicle drawer on the touchscreen.
2. Press **SETTINGS**.
3. Press **Radio**.
4. Switch **DAB servicelink** on or off.

SELECTING A DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO STATION

Manually Selecting a Radio Station



Press the button on the radio tuner to go up the frequency band.



Press the button on the radio tuner to go down the frequency band.

Using Seek



Press to seek the next station up the frequency band.

Audio System

Press and hold to quickly seek up the frequency band.



Press to seek the next station down the frequency band.

Press and hold to quickly seek down the frequency band.

Selecting a Radio Station From a List

1. Press the search button on the radio screen.
2. Press a radio station from the list.

DIGITAL AUDIO BROADCASTING RADIO SETTINGS

Slideshow

When switched on and available, the touchscreen displays supplied pictures in place of the station logo. The pictures can be enlarged by touching them.

Electronic Program Guide

When enabled and available, the touchscreen displays what is currently playing and what plays next on the selected station.

Station Logo

When switched on and available, the touchscreen displays the current FM or DAB station logo.

News Announcements

When switched on, the current playing audio source may be interrupted by news announcements. An icon on the radio screen indicates when news announcements are enabled. An icon in the status bar indicates when an announcement is active.

Regional

When switched on, the radio stays tuned to the selected FM or DAB regional station. When switched off, the radio may tune to a regional alternative of the station depending on reception.

Station List Order

Allows you to order the DAB station list by name or network.

Center Display Overview

CENTER DISPLAY PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CENTER DISPLAY LIMITATIONS

Speed-restricted Features

For your safety, some features are not available while the vehicle is in motion at or above 8 km/h. Settings that are not critical while driving your vehicle are shown as restricted on your display. Some of these settings include:

- Software updates.
- Personal profiles setup.
- Valet mode setup.
- Driver assistance settings.
- MyKey setup.
- Door keypad code setup.

These restricted features become available when your vehicle is no longer in motion.

STATUS BAR

The bar is on top of the display and indicates the status of your vehicle's features.

Audio System



Audio system muted.

Connected Device



Cell phone microphone muted.



Phone call in progress.



Media player connected using **Bluetooth®**.



Cell phone network signal strength.



Cell phone roaming.



Text message received.



Unread email message.



Automatic crash notification system off.



Cell phone battery status.

Vehicle Data



Wi-Fi available.

Center Display Overview



Wi-Fi connected.



Vehicle data sharing on.



Vehicle data sharing off.



Vehicle location sharing on.



Vehicle data and vehicle location sharing on.

Vehicle Software Update

See **Software Update Indicators** (page 355).

Wireless Accessory Charger



Wireless accessory charger active.

FEATURE BAR

The feature bar is located on the bottom of the display and allows you to access vehicle features.



Press to use the radio, a USB, a media player or a **Bluetooth®** device.



Press to make calls and access the phonebook on your cell phone.



Press to use the navigation system.



Press to replace this button with a shortcut to a feature or setting.



Press to search for and use compatible apps on your iOS or Android device.



Press to adjust system settings.



Press to view features.



Note: The icon may be different depending on your vehicle.

INFORMATION ON DEMAND SCREEN

The information on demand screen displays cards on the side of the display and allows you to see information from different features.



Press the button to view the next card.



Press the button to view the previous card.



Press the button to view available cards.

You can swipe toward the main screen to move the content into the main screen.

Note: This can only be done with some information on demand screens.

REBOOTING THE CENTER DISPLAY

You can reboot the center display using the controls on the steering wheel.

1. Simultaneously press and hold the seek forward and audio system power button for 10 seconds.

Voice Interaction

FORD ASSISTANT

USING FORD ASSISTANT

The digital assistant allows you to control vehicle features using conversational requests.

To begin a voice interaction using the wake word, say the selected wake word, then say your command.



Press the voice interaction button on the steering wheel. A tone sounds before you can say your command.

Note: You may need to enable your vehicle's modem to use certain voice commands. See **Enabling and Disabling the Modem** (page 327).

Note: When you are not driving, additional commands are available by using popular chat applications. Use FordPass to setup a conversation with your Ford assistant.

Voice Command Examples

To see examples of what voice commands you can use with different features:



Press the button on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Ford Assistant**.
2. Press **Voice Command Help**.
3. Select a feature.

FORD ASSISTANT SETTINGS

To access the settings menu:



Press the button on the touchscreen.

1. Press **Ford Assistant**.

From the settings menu you can do the following:

- Switch listen for wake word on or off.
- Set the preferred wake word.
- Switch advance mode on or off.
- Switch phone confirmation on or off.
- Switch the commands list on or off.
- View the commands help menu.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

FORD ASSISTANT – FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS

Why does the system not understand what I am saying?

- You are speaking too soon. When using the button of the steering wheel, wait for the tone before you speak.

Why does the system not understand the name of a track or artist?

- **Bluetooth®** does not support voice commands. Connect your device to a USB port.
- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the name of the track or artist exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The system does not recognize some special characters contained in the name of a song or artist, for example *, - or +. Rename the files on your device or use the touchscreen to select and play the track.

Why does the system not understand the name of a contact in the phonebook on my device and calls the wrong contact?

- You are not saying the name exactly as it appears on your device. Say the first and last name of the contact exactly as it appears on your device. Spell out any abbreviations in the name.
- The name contains special characters, for example *, - or +. Rename the contact on your device or use the touchscreen to select and call the contact.

Why does the system not understand foreign names of contacts in the phonebook on my device?

- The system applies phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names of contacts in the phonebook on your device. Select the name of the contact on the touchscreen and use the Hear it option to get an idea of how the system expects you to pronounce it.

Why do the system voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words not seem accurate?

- The system uses text-to-speech technology and a synthetically generated voice rather than a pre-recorded human voice.

Phone

PHONE PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

CONNECTING YOUR PHONE

Go to the settings menu on your device and switch **Bluetooth®** on.



Press the phone option on the feature bar.

1. Press **Add phone**.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your cell phone.

2. Select your vehicle on your cell phone.

Note: A number appears on your cell phone and on the touchscreen.

3. Confirm the number on your cell phone matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your cell phone.

4. Approve phonebook download request on your cell phone.

PHONE MENU

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

Recent Call list

Display and select an entry from a list of previous calls.

Contacts

Display a smart search form to look up your contacts. Use the List button to alphabetically sort your contacts.

Favorites

Display the list of favorite contacts that are set up on your phone.

Messaging

Displays the list of text messages to read, listen to, or respond to.

Email

Displays the list of emails to read, listen to, or respond to.

Phone List

Display the list of paired or connected devices that you can select.

Note: Up to 12 devices can be stored.

Do not disturb

Reject incoming calls and switch ring tones and alerts off.

Phone Keypad

Directly dial a number.

Phone

Voice Control

Press the button and say a command to use the Google or Siri voice assistant available on your connected phone to access supported features.

Note: *Some features under the phone menu may not be available if the feature is not supported through the phone.*

Phone

MAKING AND RECEIVING A PHONE CALL

Making Calls

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call list	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your favorites, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Favourites	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Ignore the call by doing nothing. The system logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

Phone

Item	
End call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.

Item	
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.
Hndsfree off	Transfer the phone call audio to the cell phone or back to the touchscreen.

SENDING AND RECEIVING A TEXT MESSAGE

Menu Item	Description
Hear it	Hear the text message.
View	View the text message.
Call	Call the sender.
Reply	Reply to the text message with a standard text message.

SWITCHING TEXT MESSAGE NOTIFICATION ON AND OFF

The settings on your device must be enabled to receive text message notifications on the center display. Check your device settings to enable these features.

CONNECTING A BLUETOOTH® DEVICE

1. Make sure **Bluetooth®** is enabled on your device.
2. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
3. Press **Connectivity**.
4. Press **Bluetooth**.
5. Press **Add a Bluetooth Device**.

Note: A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle on your device.

6. Select your vehicle on your device.

Note: A number appears on your device and on the touchscreen.

7. Confirm that the number on your device matches the number on the touchscreen.

Note: The touchscreen indicates that you have successfully paired your device.

The **Bluetooth®** word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by **Bluetooth SIG, Inc.** and any use of such marks by Ford Motor Company is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

PLAYING MEDIA USING BLUETOOTH®



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any

hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Connect your device.



Press the audio button on the feature bar.



Press **Sources**.



Press the **Bluetooth®** option.



Press to play a track. Press again to pause the track.



Press to skip to the next track.

Press and hold to fast forward through the track.



Press once to return to the beginning of a track. Repeatedly press to return to previous

tracks.

Press and hold to fast rewind through the track.

APP PRECAUTIONS



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

APP REQUIREMENTS

When you start an app through the system for the first time, you could be asked to grant certain permissions. You can review and change the permissions that you have granted at any time when your vehicle is not moving. We recommend that you check your data plan before using your apps through the system. Using them could result in additional charges. We also recommend that you check the app provider's terms and conditions and privacy policy before using their app. Make sure that you have an active account for apps that you want to use through the system. Some apps will work with no setup. Others require you to configure some personal settings before you can use them.

ACCESSING APPS



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

ENABLING APPS ON AN IOS DEVICE



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Select Mobile Apps Help.
2. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.
4. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: Some apps may run through Apple CarPlay if it is enabled.

Note: Closing an app on your device will close it on the touchscreen.

Note: For troubleshooting assistance select *Compatible Apps List* or *My App Isn't Listed* under *Mobile Apps Help*.

ENABLING APPS ON AN ANDROID DEVICE



Select the apps option on the feature bar.

1. Select Mobile Apps Help.
2. Follow the instructions to pair and connect your device via **Bluetooth®** or with a USB cable.
3. Start the apps on your device that you want to use.
4. Select **Find mobile apps**.
5. Select the app that you want to use on the touchscreen.

Note: To enable apps when pairing with a USB cable, switch on *Android Apps via USB* in *Settings*.

Apps

Note: Some devices may lose the ability to play music over USB when Mobile Apps are enabled.

Note: Some apps may run through Android Auto if it is enabled.

Note: Closing an app on your device closes it on the touchscreen.

Note: For troubleshooting assistance select *Compatible Apps List* or *My App Isn't Listed* under *Mobile Apps Help*.

SWITCHING APPLE CARPLAY ON AND OFF

Enabling Apple CarPlay with USB

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: Selecting "Enable Wireless CarPlay" on your device prepares the device for wireless CarPlay when you re-enter the vehicle.

Enabling Apple CarPlay with Wireless

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Disabling Apple CarPlay



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Disable.

Re-Enabling Apple CarPlay



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Connect to Apple CarPlay.

SWITCHING ANDROID AUTO ON AND OFF

Enabling Android Auto with USB

(If Equipped)

1. Connect your device to a USB port.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Note: Certain features of the system are not available when you are using Android Auto.

Enabling Android Auto with Wireless

1. Pair your device to **Bluetooth®**.
2. Follow the instructions on your device and the touchscreen.

Note: Certain Android Devices do not support Android Auto Wireless. Please check your Android OS version for compatibility.

Disabling Android Auto



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.
3. Press Disable.

Re-Enabling Android Auto



Select the settings option on the feature bar.

1. Press Phone List.
2. Select your device from the list.

3. Press Connect to Android Auto.

CONNECTED NAVIGATION (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with connected navigation. Depending on your version, you are given a 90 day or 3 year trial. After the trial period, you need to sign up to continue the experience. For additional information, visit ford.com/connectedservices.

Note: *If you do not sign up or renew your subscription, you can still use navigation through a connected device.*

ACCESSING NAVIGATION

[Bronco Off-Road App](#)



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



Press the button to access Navigation.

Note: *For optimal reception performance, keep the antenna clear of snow and ice build-up and keep luggage and other material as far away from the antenna as possible. Placing luggage over the antenna may reduce performance.*

NAVIGATION MAP UPDATES

To update your Map data over Wi-Fi, your vehicle must be connected to a Wi-Fi access point. For USB updates and other details, contact an authorized Ford dealer.

Note: *If you find map data errors, you may report them by going to www.here.com/mapcreator.*

ADJUSTING THE MAP

ZOOMING THE MAP IN AND OUT

You can use pinch gestures to zoom in and out. Place two fingers on the screen and move them apart to zoom in. Place two fingers on the screen and bring them together to zoom out.

CHANGING THE FORMAT OF THE MAP



Press the Menu button.

1. Press the Map Orientation tile.
2. Select a map orientation.

LIVE TRAFFIC

WHAT IS LIVE TRAFFIC

You can observe real-time road congestion when live traffic is on.

SWITCHING LIVE TRAFFIC ON AND OFF



Press the Menu button.

1. Press the Traffic on Map tile.

Navigation (If Equipped)

2. Press Traffic on or Traffic Off.

SETTING A DESTINATION

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE TEXT ENTRY SCREEN

1. Press the search bar at the top of the screen.
2. Enter your destination using the keyboard.
3. Press Search.
4. Select a destination from the list.
5. Press Start to begin navigation.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING THE MAP SCREEN

Press and hold on the map to place a pin at that location. Information about the location of the pin appears on the screen.



Press the button to begin navigation to the pin.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A PREDICTIVE DESTINATION

Press the predicted destination card on the screen to navigate to it. These appear when the navigation system has learned your driving habits.

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A RECENT DESTINATION



Press the button.

Press a destination from the list.

Note: *You can also use the search button to view recent destinations.*

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A SAVED DESTINATION

Press the star icon next when viewing location details to save the location.



Press the button.

Press a destination from the list.

Note: *You can also use the search button to view saved destinations.*

SETTING A DESTINATION USING A POINT OF INTEREST

Press a point of interest icon on the map. Information about the location of the point of interest appears on the screen.



Press the button to begin navigation to the point of interest.

Note: *You can also use the search button to view points of interest.*

WAYPOINTS

ADDING A WAYPOINT



Press the Add Waypoint button when in an active navigation session.

1. Enter your waypoint on the keyboard.
2. Press Search.
3. Select a waypoint from the list.
4. Press Add to Trip.

EDITING WAYPOINTS

1. Press the waypoint you would like to edit.
2. Select an option to reorder or delete the waypoint.

ROUTE GUIDANCE

ADJUSTING THE GUIDANCE PROMPT VOLUME

Turn the volume control when a guidance prompt plays to adjust the volume.

REPEATING AN INSTRUCTION

Press the turn indicator to hear the last voice instruction.

ROUTE GUIDANCE SETTINGS

Avoid 4x4 Roads

Before Starting a Navigation Session

Before starting a navigation session you can enable and disable 4x4 roads using the controls on the point of interest detail page. When enabled the system will include 4x4 roads when determining the best route. When disabled the system will avoid 4x4 roads.

During a Navigation Session

If you do not wish to have your route take you on 4x4 roads you can remove the turn onto the 4x4 road using the turn list.

1. Tap the chevron below the turn panel.
2. Swipe to the left on the 4x4 road on the turn list that appears.
3. Press the delete button to remove that road from your route.

The system will then re-route you to your destination.

CANCELING ROUTE GUIDANCE



Press the button to cancel route guidance to the selected location.

Vehicle Software Updates

This introduces new features and provides updates to the vehicle's software systems. Make sure to switch Automatic Updates on, set a recurring update schedule and connect your vehicle to Wi-Fi. Updates could take longer when not connected to Wi-Fi or could not download at all. See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 327). See **Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network** (page 327).

Your vehicle may be able to receive drivable software updates, non-drivable software updates or both. Drivable software updates happen during normal vehicle usage and require limited input from you. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update.

Most updates complete in less than 30 minutes, although some updates could take up to a few hours. Check your touchscreen or connected device for the most accurate estimated update time.

You are notified of the status of the vehicle software update in the touchscreen and on your connected device. See **Software Update Indicators** (page 355).

Vehicle Software Update Requirements

Non-drivable software updates do not install if any of the following occur:

- Your vehicle is running.
- Your vehicle is switched on.
- Your vehicle is not parked.
- The 12 V battery charge is too low.
- The hazard indicators are switched on.
- The alarm is sounding.
- The doors are open.
- The parking lamps are switched on.
- You are pressing the brake pedal.

- An emergency call is in process.
- Your vehicle is in limp home mode.

Vehicle Software Update Limitations

Once you begin a non-drivable software update, you cannot:

- Cancel the update.
- Lock, unlock or enter your vehicle unless you have a key blade.
 - You can open the doors using the mechanical latch if child locks are not on.
- Drive your vehicle.
- Start your vehicle.
- Use the remote control to lock, unlock or start your vehicle.
- Use the alarm, central locks or door tones.
- Use the electronic door locks.
- Charge your vehicle.
 - Charging resumes once the update completes.

SOFTWARE UPDATE SETTINGS

To access the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **Software Updates**.

You can do the following in the Software Updates menu:

- Switch Automatic Updates on and off.
- Schedule and install software updates.
- View software update details.



Press the button next to a menu option for more information.

Vehicle Software Updates

Switching Automatic Updates On and Off

Your vehicle may come with Automatic Updates switched on. To make sure your vehicle always has the latest software, which could include security or other enhancements, we do not recommend switching Automatic Updates off.

Note: *Software updates require approval to download or install with Automatic Updates switched off.*

Scheduling and Installing Software Updates

Scheduling Software Updates

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Schedule Updates**.
2. Select the days and time for updates.
3. Press **Save**.

The more days that updates are scheduled, the more frequently your vehicle installs new updates. We recommend selecting a time you normally do not need your vehicle, such as overnight.

Some updates require your vehicle to be switched off.

Note: *The schedule you set is recurring. If Automatic Updates is on, every time a non-drivable update is available, it installs on this schedule unless you change it. You are notified on your touchscreen and connected device prior to a non-drivable update, with an option to reschedule it.*

Installing Software Updates

Using the Status Bar

1. Press a Software Update indicator on your touchscreen when it appears.
2. Follow the instructions on the touchscreen.

Using the Touchscreen

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.
2. Press **Update Now**.

Viewing Software Update Details

From the Software Updates menu:

1. Press **Update Details**.

SOFTWARE UPDATE INDICATORS

You can press the indicators in the status bar when they appear for more information.



Vehicle software update reminder, schedule required, confirmation of default schedule required, or consent required.



Vehicle software update canceled, update not successful, or precondition not met.



Vehicle software update successful.

Vehicle System Reset

PERFORMING A SYSTEM RESET

Performing a system reset allows you to remove all personal information and restore settings to their factory defaults.

1. Press **Settings** on the touchscreen.
2. Press **General**.
3. Press **Reset**.
4. Press **Master Reset**.
5. Follow the prompts on the screen to complete the reset.

Auxiliary Switches (If Equipped)

WHAT ARE THE AUXILIARY SWITCHES

The auxiliary switchboard on the overhead console makes aftermarket customization easier with six prewired switches connected to the power distribution box. Each circuit is individually fused for connection of electrical accessories.

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the safety compliance certification label). Ask an authorized dealer for specific weight information.
- It is your responsibility to ensure that any equipment you have fitted complies with applicable local legislation.
- An authorized dealer needs to install mobile communication systems. Improper installation may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if the manufacturer did not design the mobile communication system specifically for automotive use.
- If you or an authorized dealer add any electrical or electronic accessories or components not produced by us to your vehicle, you may adversely affect battery performance and durability. In addition, you may also adversely affect the performance of the other electrical systems in the vehicle.

LOCATING THE AUXILIARY SWITCHES

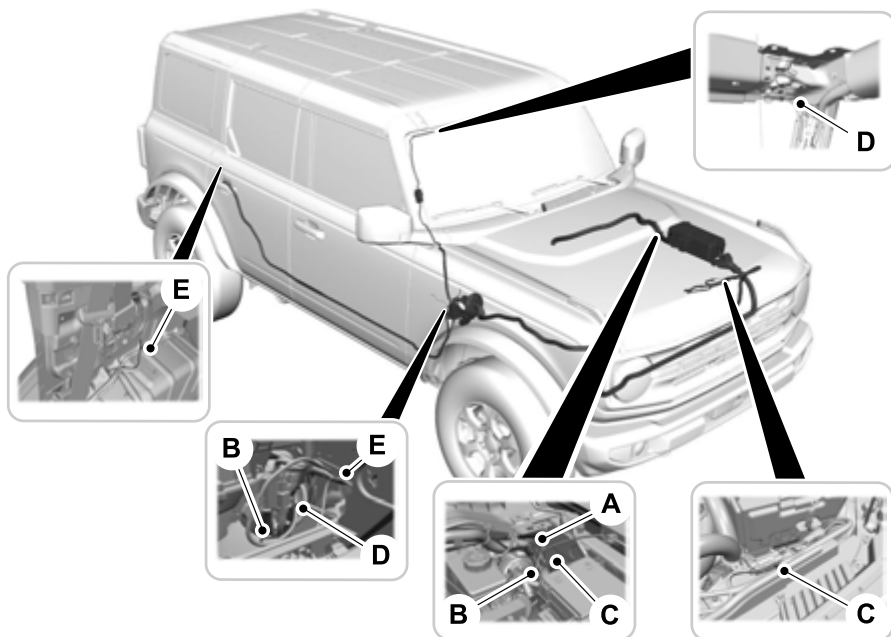
The switches are labeled AUX 1 through AUX 6. They only operate when the ignition is in the on position or in the off position when Delay Accessory is active, whether the engine is running or not. We recommend that you leave the engine running to maintain battery charge when using the switches for an extended time or when using higher current draw accessories. When a switch is turned on, the indicator light on the switch illuminates and the circuit provides power to the device wired to that switch.



LOCATING THE AUXILIARY SWITCH WIRING

There are six powered circuits and five non-powered circuits.

Auxiliary Switches (If Equipped)



- A Circuits from under hood fuse box. See **Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box** (page 252).
- B Circuits to interior right-hand cowl side.
- C Circuit to front grille.
- D Circuit to right-hand visor.
- E Circuit to right-hand rear quarter panel.

Circuits from the under hood fuse box (A) are powered. All other circuits (B-E) are not connected at either end.

Additional information on fuse and relay locations is available. See **Fuses** (page 252). See your authorized dealer for service.

Auxiliary Switches (If Equipped)

IDENTIFYING THE AUXILIARY SWITCH WIRING

The switches are coded as follows:

Power Distribution Box	Wire Color	Wire Size	Fuse
AUX 1	Yellow	1.5 mm ²	30A
AUX 2	Green/Brown	1.5 mm ²	15A
AUX 3	Violet/Green	0.75 mm ²	10A
AUX 4	Brown	0.75 mm ²	10A
AUX 5	Blue/Orange	0.75 mm ²	10A
AUX 6	Yellow/Orange	0.75 mm ²	10A

Non-powered circuits:

Note: The non-powered circuits correspond with the auxiliary switch wiring graphic. See *Locating the Auxiliary Switch Wiring* (page 357).

Non-powered Circuit	Location	Wire Color	Wire Size
B1	Passenger compartment	Brown/White	1.5 mm ²
B2	Passenger compartment	White	1.5 mm ²
C	Front grille	Violet/Gray	1.5 mm ²
D	Right-hand visor	Gray/Orange	1.5 mm ²
E	Right-hand rear quarter panel	White/Orange	1.5 mm ²

ROLLOVER WARNING



WARNING: Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.



WARNING: Vehicles with a higher center of gravity (utility and four-wheel drive vehicles) handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity (passenger cars). Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt steering in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously increases the risk of losing control of your vehicle, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



WARNING: In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seatbelt.



WARNING: Do not become overconfident in the ability of four-wheel drive vehicles. Although a four-wheel drive vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE COPYRIGHT ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Your vehicle could have components that use open source software. For additional information, visit <http://corporate.ford.com/ford-open-source.html>.

DECLARATION OF CONFORMITY

Your vehicle could have components that transmit and receive radio waves and are therefore subject to government regulation.

These components must accept any interference received, including interference that could cause undesired operation. For certification labels and declarations of conformity, visit www.wirelessconformity.ford.com.

REACH

We are committed to promoting the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products and support the underlying goals of **REACH**, a European Union regulation that concerns the registration, evaluation, authorisation and restriction of chemicals.

We specifically support Regulation EC 1907/2006 Article 33(1) that relates to substances of very high concern which appear on the current list for authorisation.

If these substances do exist in a product, it is important to guarantee their safe use so the regulation is designed to enable you to take any appropriate risk management measures.

Customer Information

To find out more about the **REACH** directive, search **REACH** on the local Ford website.

Note: To find the local Ford website, visit <https://corporate.ford.com/operations/locations/global-links.html>.

RADIO FREQUENCY CERTIFICATION LABELS

BLIND SPOT INFORMATION SYSTEM SENSORS

Argentina



Belarus



Brazil



Canada

Short Range Radar Sensor SRR3-B
IC ID: 4135A-SRR3B

Customer Information

This device contains licence-exempt transmitter(s)/receiver(s) that comply with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference.
2. This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Radiofrequency radiation exposure information:

This equipment complies with radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This equipment should be installed and operated with minimum distance of 8 in (20 cm) between the radiator and the body of any persons, user or bystander.

L'émetteur/récepteur exempt de licence contenu dans le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Innovation, Sciences et Développement économique Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements établies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet équipement doit être installé et utilisé avec un minimum de 8 in (20 cm) de distance entre la source de rayonnement et votre corps.

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 240/MCPT/SG/16
Date d'agrément : 23/05/2016

European Union EU

CE

Customer Information

Ghana

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: 3R8-8M-7DF-231

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0727/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 10/12/2019

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved
by Jamaica: SMA - SRR3-B.

Malaysia



RALM/24A/0715/S(15-2272)

Mexico

IFETEL: RLVCSR15-0904

La operación de este equipo está sujeta a las siguientes
dos condiciones:

- (1) es posible que este equipo o dispositivo no cause
interferencia perjudicial y
- (2) este equipo o dispositivo debe aceptar cualquier
interferencia, incluyendo la que pueda causar
su operación no deseada.

Moldova



Customer Information

Pakistan



Serbia



NO11 18

Paraguay



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Russia



South Africa

TA-2015/444
APPROVED



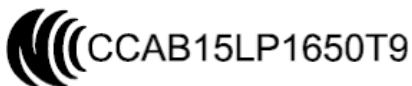
Customer Information

South Korea



MSIP-CRM-8DC-SRR3B

Taiwan, China



警語

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Customer Information

Ukraine



справжнім fIDC. Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH заявляє, що тип радіообладнання SRR3 - В відповідає технічному регламенту радіообладнання ;

повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою :

<http://continental.automotive-approvals.com/>

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER62934

DEALER No:
DA40068

United Kingdom



United States of America

FCC ID: OAYSRR3B

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

CAUTION TO USERS

Customer Information

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Vietnam



Zambia



BODY CONTROL MODULE

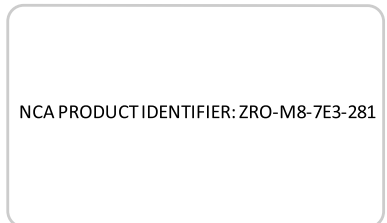
Argentina



Brazil



Ghana



Customer Information

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA - M3NA2C766336.

Paraguay



Moldova



2019-01-I-000076

Serbia



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR 20148 ANRT 2019
Date d'agrément: 19/06/2019

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Customer Information

South Africa



Ukraine



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)


TRA REGISTERED No: ER68566/19

DEALER No: DA37380/15

United Kingdom



United States and Canada

 **WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: M3NA2C766336

IC: 7812A-A2C766336

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Vietnam



Customer Information

Zambia



Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 594/dpt/2017

Date d'agrément : 09/04/2017

Ghana

CRUISE CONTROL MODULE

Argentina

NCA PRODUCT IDENTIFIER: OR2-9H-7E1-x4D



Indonesia

SERTIFIKAT NOMOR : 53104/SDPPI/2017

PLG ID: 4927



Brazil



Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved
by Jamaica: SMA - L2C0065TR.

Customer Information

Malaysia



RALM/61A/0318/S(18-0852)

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0409/ARE/2017
Date d'agrément: 12/04/2017

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément: MR 13639 ARNT 2017
Date d'agrément: 28/03/2017

Pakistan



Paraguay



Customer Information

Serbia



South Korea



Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards
DA105753

R-CMM-DLH-L2C0065TR

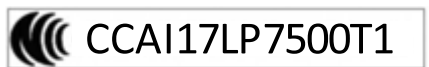
Syria

SyTRA
REGISTERED No:
FR00085-17

South Africa



Taiwan, China



Customer Information

Ukraine



This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

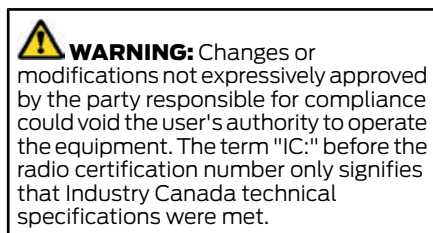
1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia

United Arab Emirates



United States and Canada



FCC ID: L2C0065TR

IC: 3432A-0065TR

KEYS AND REMOTE CONTROLS

Argentina



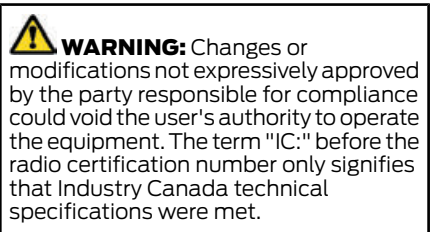
Customer Information



Brazil



Canada and United States of America



FCC ID: M3N-A2C931426

FCC ID: M3N-A2C931423

IC: 7812A-A2C931426

IC: 7812A-A2C913423

Customer Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément:

074/DDTIC/MCPT

Date d'agrément:

20/05/2021

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément:

073/DDTIC/MCPT

Date d'agrément:

20/05/2021

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 2R9-8M-7E0-x94

NCA APPROVED: 2R9-1H-7E0-01A

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – A2C97102000

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – A2C93142100

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931426

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – M3N-A2C931423

Customer Information

Malaysia



F17000176

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément:

0920/ARE/2021

Date d'agrément:

18/02/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément:

0919/ARE/2021

Date d'agrément:

18/02/2021

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC

Numéro d'agrément : MR 12432 ANRT 2016

Date d'agrément : 31/08/2016

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 12433 ANRT 2016

Date d'agrément : 31/08/2016

Customer Information

Pakistan



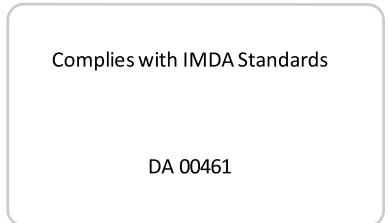
Serbia



Paraguay



Singapore



NR: 2016-9-I-000222

NR: 2016-9-I-000220

NR: 2016-9-I-000223

South Africa



Customer Information



South Korea



MSIP-CRM-TAL-A2C97102000

Taiwan, China



Ukraine



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA

REGISTERED No: ER47690/16

DEALER No: DA37380/15

Customer Information

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER46754/16

DEALER No:
DA37380/15



Vietnam

RADIO TRANSCEIVER MODULE

Argentina



Zambia

Brazil



Customer Information

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéros d'agrément : 033/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément : 07/06/2020

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéros d'agrément : 034/DDTIC/2020
Date d'agrément : 07/06/2020

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0802/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément : 03/06/2020

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-108

NCA APPROVED: SRO-1M-7E4-114

Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 24102 ANRT 2020
Date d'agrément : 18/05/2020

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément: 0803/ARE/2020
Date d'agrément: 03/06/2020

Pakistan



Customer Information

South Africa



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)


TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER81341/20

DEALER No:
DA88113/20

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER81342/20

DEALER No:
DA88113/20

United States and Canada

 **WARNING:** Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: L2C0082R

FCC ID: L2C0083TR

IC: 342A-0083TR

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia



Customer Information

SYNC

Argentina



CNC ID: C-24008



08658-19-01505

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.



CNC ID: C-24009

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

Numéro d'agrément : 124/DDTIC/2019

Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

Brazil



08657-19-01505

AGREE PAR LE MCPT (REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)

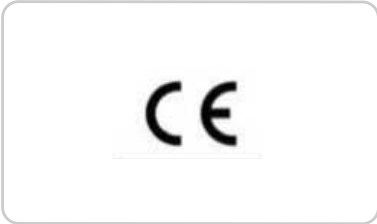
Numéro d'agrément : 125/DDTIC/2019

Date d'agrément : 07/08/2019

Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.

Customer Information

European Union EU



Model: SYNC-G4L
Sertifikat Nomor: **81116**/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



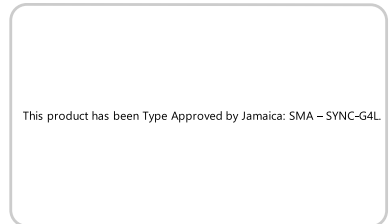
Ghana

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-182

NCA APPROVED: ZRO-1H-7E3-180

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by
Jamaica: SMA – SYNC-G4.



Indonesia

Model: SYNC-G4
Sertifikat Nomor: 80700/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Customer Information

Malaysia



SQASI/TA/19/4047

SQASI/TA/19/4046

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE

Numéro d'agrément : 0692/ARE/2018

Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0691/ARE/2018
Date d'agrément : 08/08/2019

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20608 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

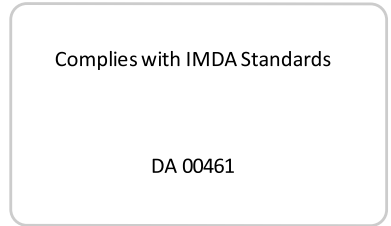
AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
N° D'AGRÉMENT: MR 20606 ANRT 2019
07 AOUT 2019

Customer Information

Pakistan



Singapore



Paraguay



South Africa



2020-03-I-00192

2020-03-I-00193

Serbia



Customer Information

South Korea



MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNG4



MSIP-R-C-FDM-SYNG4L

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

Taiwan



CCAB20LP0290T8

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

UAE - TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER74902/19
DEALER No:
DA37380/15



CCAB20LP0300T1

TRA
REGISTERED No: ER74903/19
DEALER No: DA37380/15

Customer Information

United States and Canada



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4

FCC ID: KMH-SYNCG4L

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4

IC: 1422A-SYNCG4L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Zambia



TELEMATICS CONTROL UNIT

Argentina



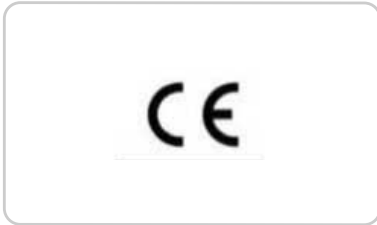
C-28150

Brazil



Customer Information

Europe Union EU



United Kingdom



United States and Canada

Mexico



WARNING: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

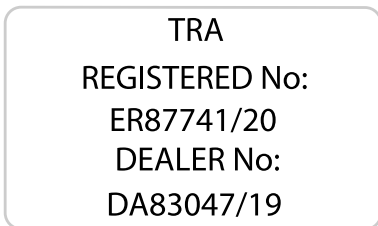
FCC ID: KMH-14H074-NA1

IC: 1422A-14H074NA1

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)



Customer Information

South Africa



TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: 315 MHZ SENSORS

Argentina



Vietnam



Brazil

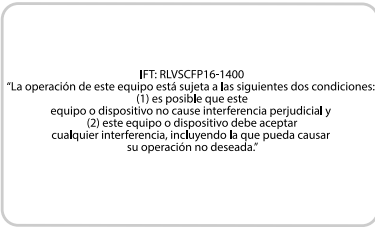


Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica: SMA – FP3

Customer Information

Mexico



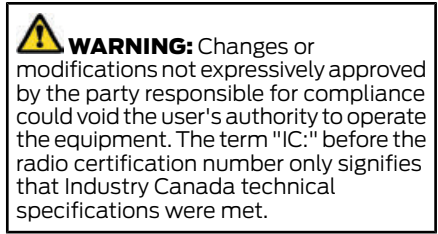
Paraguay



United Kingdom



United States and Canada



FCC ID: MRXFP3

IC: 2546A-FP3

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM SENSORS - VEHICLES WITH: 433 MHZ SENSORS

Argentina



Customer Information

China

CMIIT ID: 2016DJ6033

Djibouti

AGREE PAR LE MCPT
(REPUBLIQUE DE DJIBOUTI)
Numéro d'agrément : 547/MCPT/DPT/16
Date d'agrément : 27/09/16

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC

N° d'homologation: HIR-0099/09/2016

Date d'homologation: 15/09/2016

European Union (EU)

The CE mark is displayed in a large, bold, black font, centered within a white rectangular box with rounded corners. The letters 'C' and 'E' are slightly separated and have a small horizontal line underneath them.

The RED 2014/53/EU (replacing R&TTE Directive 1999/5/EC on 13 June 2016) explicitly states that instructions for intentional radiators include reference to "(a) frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates; and (b) maximum radio-frequency power transmitted in the frequency band(s) in which the radio equipment operates," in addition to carrying over the general operational instruction and Declaration of Conformity inclusion requirements from the R&TTE Directive.

Hereby, Schrader Electronics Ltd. declares that the radio equipment type FP4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address:

http://www.tpmseuroshop.com/documents/declaration_conformities

Customer Information

f=433.92MHz

P<10mW (e.i.r.p)

Schrader Electronics Ltd. 11 Technology Park, Belfast Road, Antrim BT41 1QS, Northern Ireland United Kingdom.

Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 2R9-8M-7E0-0BE

Independent State of Samoa



Israel

.1. מספר התדיר : SCHRADER ELECTRONICS LTD : יצרן FP4 : דגם 2100 : מספר תדיר		
מספר (מסמך)	מספר חוזרים (מסמך)	
0.000010	434.7900	433.0500
2. איתור זה של המסמך על ידי מסמך 18/12/2023 אלא אם כן יבוקר על ידי מסמך המסמך.		

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANE MAURITANIE
 Numéro d'agrément : 0358/ARE/2016
 Date d'agrément : 04/10/2016

Moldova



Customer Information

Nigeria

Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission

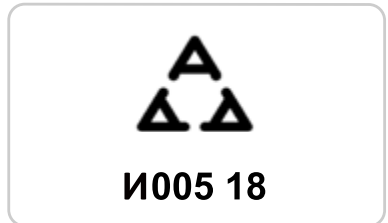
Paraguay



Oman

OMAN TRA
TA-R/3591/16
D080134

Serbia



Pakistan



Sierra Leone



TAN: 2016-002-0035

Customer Information

South Korea



MSIP-CRM-SRD-FP4

Ukraine



UA.TR.028

United Arab Emirates

TRA
REGISTERED No:
ER48598/16

DEALER No.
DA0047074

United Kingdom



**WIRELESS ACCESSORY
CHARGING MODULE**

Argentina

The CNC logo, with 'CNC' in a bold, black sans-serif font and a red dot above the 'C', followed by 'COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES' in a smaller, black sans-serif font.

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26491

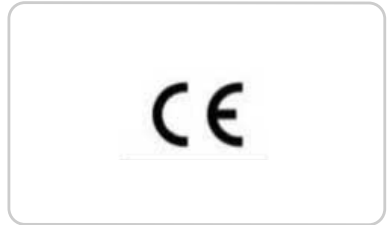
The CNC logo, with 'CNC' in a bold, black sans-serif font and a red dot above the 'C', followed by 'COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES' in a smaller, black sans-serif font.

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL
DE COMUNICACIONES

CNCID: H-26492

Customer Information

European Union



Brazil



Ghana

NCA APPROVED: 7ES-7M-XB1-RDR

Democratic Republic of Congo

Agréé par l'ARPTC
N° d'homologation : HER-0054/Juin/2021
Date d'homologation : 02/06/2021

Indonesia

Model: WCFDM00N2A1
Sertifikat Nomor: 80110/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



Customer Information

Model: WCFDM00N2A3
Sertifikat Nomor: 80111/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



1. מספר אישור התאמה מסוגם פטורד התקשורת : 51-80015
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולת במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Model: WCFDM00N2A5
Sertifikat Nomor: 80112/SDPPI/2022
PLG ID: 13493



1. מספר אישור התאמה מסוגם פטורד התקשורת : 51-80013
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולת במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Israel

1. מספר אישור התאמה מסוגם פטורד התקשורת : 51-80054
2. חל אישור לבצע פעולת במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינוי תכונה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעת אלחוטיות

Jamaica

This product has been Type Approved by Jamaica:
SMA - WCFDM00N2A.

Malaysia



Customer Information

RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2033)

RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2032)

RGEZ/35A/0521/S(21-2031)

Mauritania

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0935/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0934/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANEMAURITANIE
Numéro d'agrément : 0933/ARE/2021
Date d'agrément : 23/03/2021

Moldova



Morocco

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027924ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Numéro d'agrément : MR 00027925ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021

Customer Information

Serbia

AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC
Nu méro d'agrément : MR 00027923ANRT 2021
Date d'agrément : 25/03/2021



W005 21

Paraguay



2021-04-I-0204

2021-04-I-0203

2021-04-I-0202

Russia



Sierra Leone



TAN: 2021-002-0099

Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards

DA 00461

Customer Information

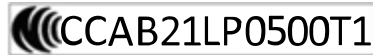
South Africa



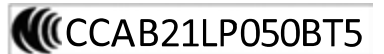
Taiwan



South Korea



R-R-LGE-WCFDM00N2A1



Customer Information

品名(Product name): 無線充電座

型號 (Type Designation): WCFDM00N2A1, WCFDM00N2A3, WCFDM00N2A5 產地 (Origin): 馬來西亞

額定電壓(Input rating): 12V

製造日期 (Approval date): 2021.04.21



申請廠商名稱(Approval name): 福特六和汽車股份有限公司

申請廠商地址(Approval address): 桃園市中壢區中華路一段705號

Ukraine



United Kingdom



United Arab Emirates (U.A.E.)

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER98638/21

DEALER No:

DA37380/15

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER00421/21

DEALER No:

DA37380/15

TRA REGISTERED No:

ER00422/21

DEALER No:

DA37380/15

United States and Canada

FCC ID: BEJWCFDM00N2A

IC: 2703H-WCFDM00N2A

Customer Information

This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and may cause harmful interference to radio communications. There is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, please consult the dealer.

This product is not end-user serviceable.

RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 20cm between the radiator and your body.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada's licence-exempt RSS(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Le présent appareil est conforme aux CNR d'Industrie Canada applicables aux appareils radio exempts de licence. L'exploitation est autorisée aux deux conditions suivantes:

1. L'appareil ne doit pas produire de brouillage;
2. L'appareil doit accepter tout brouillage radioélectrique subi, même si le brouillage est susceptible d'en compromettre le fonctionnement.

Zambia



REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations and instructions using parts that conform to the original vehicle parts specification. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Customer Information

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle because of failed non-Ford parts. For extra information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT



WARNING: Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

Customer Information

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations.

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR

COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.

- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:**

You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:**

You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.

Customer Information

- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.
- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

Customer Information

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages:

EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

Customer Information

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.
- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Customer Information

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN ARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

Customer Information

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

Customer Information

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

may award the same damages to you individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to you individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- i. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

Customer Information

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

(a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;

(b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;

(c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;

(d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;

(e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

Customer Information

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

Customer Information

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

Customer Information

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

Customer Information

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors.

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd ("NAV2") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Customer Information

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you "as is," and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

Customer Information

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

<p style="text-align: center;">NOTICE OF USE</p> <p>CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE</p> <p>CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois 60606</p> <p>This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to these End-User Terms under which this Data was provided.</p> <p>© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.</p>
--

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

- I. US/Canada Territory
 - A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:
 - "HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information."
 - "©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4."

Customer Information

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: “This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen’s Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved.”

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources Canada (“NRCan”). Such data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

Customer Information

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory	Notice
Argentina	IGN “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO NACIONAL ARGENTINO”
Ecuador	“INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION Nº IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011” “source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”
Guadeloupe, French Guiana and Martinique	
Mexico	“Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

Customer Information

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country	Notice
Jordan	“© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: “Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l’Équipement et des Transports.”

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client’s entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey (“OS”) to create and sell paper maps, Client’s paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client’s complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

Customer Information

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landervermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Austria	"© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen"
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	"© EuroGeographics"
France	"source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®"
Germany	"Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen"
Great Britain	"Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010"
Greece	"Copyright Geomatics Ltd."
Hungary	"Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd."
Italy	"La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana."
Norway	"Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority"
Portugal	"Source: IgeoE – Portugal"

Customer Information

Spain "Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG"

Sweden "Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden."

Switzerland "Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie."

E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client's compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.

VI. Australia Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.psm.com.au).

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelematics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: "Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors."

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION "UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER" INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER'S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

Customer Information

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER'S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTEE THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER'S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

Customer Information

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Customer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

Customer Information

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

Customer Information

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content") , Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

Customer Information

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracernote 2007.

Taiwan Territory

According to the "Technical Specifications for Low Power Radio Frequency Equipment" formulated by the National Communications and Communication Committee of the Executive Yuan: 3.8.2. For the low-power radio frequency equipment that has obtained the verification certificate, the company, firm or user shall not change the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

The use of low-power radio frequency equipment must not affect flight safety and interfere with legal communications: when the system detects interference, immediately stop using it until there is no interference.

The aforementioned legal communication refers to the wireless communication operated in accordance with the provisions of the Telecommunications Management Law. Low-power radio frequency equipment needs to endure the interference of legal communication or industrial, scientific and medical radio wave radiation electrical equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatrafic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

Customer Information

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorized drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavors to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or

Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY



WARNING: Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



WARNING: Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

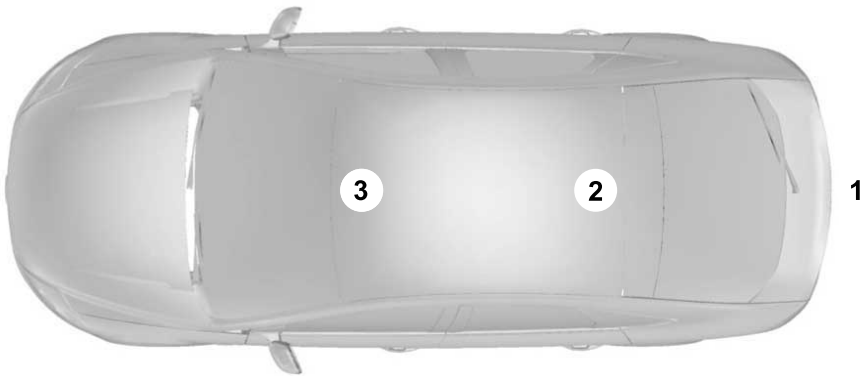


WARNING: Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm from any electronic modules and airbags.

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation. It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements. Installation of some aftermarket electronic devices could degrade the performance of vehicle functions, which use radio frequency signals such as broadcast radio receiver, tire pressure monitoring system, push button start, **Bluetooth**® connectivity or satellite navigation.

Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following illustrations and table. We do not provide any other special provisions or conditions for installations or use.

Car

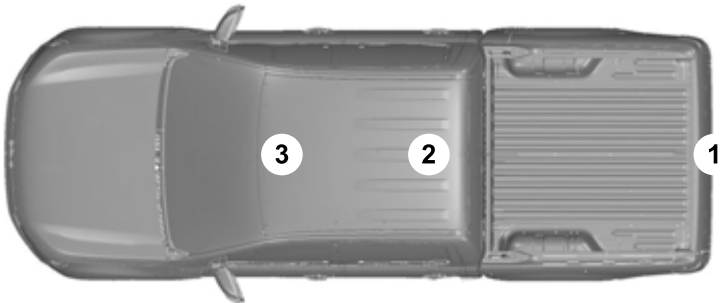


Appendices

Van



Truck



Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum Output Power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Note: *After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.*

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the vehicle running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

Index

1	
12V Battery.....	268
12V Battery Precautions.....	268
Battery Management System Limitations.....	269
Changing the 12V Battery.....	269
Charging the 12V Battery.....	271
How Does the Battery Management System Work.....	269
Recycling and Disposing of the 12V Battery.....	271
Resetting the Battery Sensor.....	270
What Is the Battery Management System.....	269
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	271
12V Battery – Information Messages.....	271
12V Battery – Warning Lamps.....	271
3	
360 Degree Camera.....	180
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	182
360 Degree Camera Guide Lines.....	181
360 Degree Camera Limitations.....	180
360 Degree Camera Precautions.....	180
360 Degree Camera Settings.....	182
Switching the 360 Degree Camera On and Off.....	182
Switching the 360 Degree Camera View.....	182
4	
4WD See: Four-Wheel Drive.....	135
A	
A/C See: Climate Control.....	93
About This Publication.....	13
ABS See: Brakes.....	147
Accessing Apps.....	348
Accessing Navigation.....	351
Accessing the Passive Key Backup Position.....	119
Adaptive Cruise Control.....	183
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	189
Adaptive Cruise Control Indicators.....	188
Adaptive Cruise Control Limitations.....	184
Adaptive Cruise Control Precautions.....	183
Adaptive Cruise Control – Troubleshooting.....	189
Adaptive Cruise Control – Information Messages.....	189
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	77
Switching the Headlamps for Driving on the Left or Right-Hand Side of the Road.....	77
Adjusting the Exterior Mirrors.....	83
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	272
Adjusting the Instrument Panel Lighting Brightness.....	79
Adjusting the Map.....	351
Changing the Format of the Map.....	351
Zooming the Map In and Out.....	351
Adjusting the Seatbelts During Pregnancy.....	39
Adjusting the Sound Settings.....	333
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	67
Adjusting the Volume.....	333
Aid Mode.....	200
How Does Aid Mode Work.....	200
What Is Aid Mode.....	200
Airbag Precautions.....	43
Airbags.....	41
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	44
Air Conditioning See: Climate Control.....	93
Air Conditioning System Capacity and Specification.....	321
Air Filter See: Changing the Engine Air Filter – 2.7L EcoBoost™.....	267
Alert and Aid Mode.....	200
How Does Alert and Aid Mode Work.....	201
What Is Alert and Aid Mode.....	200
Alert Mode.....	199
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Vibration Intensity.....	200
How Does Alert Mode Work.....	200
What Is Alert Mode.....	199

Index

AM/FM Radio.....	334	What Is Automatic Engine Stop.....	118
AM/FM Radio Limitations.....	334	Automatic High Beam Control.....	74
Selecting a Radio Station.....	334	Automatic High Beam Control	
Ambient Lighting.....	79	Indicators.....	76
Adjusting Ambient Lighting.....	79	Automatic High Beam Control	
Switching Ambient Lighting On and		Limitations.....	75
Off.....	79	Automatic High Beam Control	
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	147	Precautions.....	75
Appendices.....	428	Automatic High Beam Control	
Applying the Electric Parking Brake.....	151	Requirements.....	75
Applying the Electric Parking Brake in an		How Does Automatic High Beam Control	
Emergency.....	151	Work.....	74
App Precautions.....	348	Overriding Automatic High Beam	
App Requirements.....	348	Control.....	76
Apps.....	348	Switching Automatic High Beam Control	
Audio System.....	332	On and Off.....	76
AM/FM Radio.....	334	Automatic High Beam Control –	
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	335	Troubleshooting.....	76
Audio System Precautions.....	332	Automatic High Beam Control –	
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	82	Information Messages.....	76
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror		Automatic Locking Mode.....	38
Limitations.....	82	Disengaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	39
What Is the Auto-Dimming Interior		Engaging Automatic Locking Mode.....	38
Mirror.....	82	What Is Automatic Locking Mode.....	38
Autolamps.....	73	Automatic Transmission Audible	
Autolamp Settings.....	73	Warnings.....	134
What Are Autolamps.....	73	Automatic Transmission.....	132
Autolock.....	56	Automatic Transmission Positions.....	132
Autolock Requirements.....	57	Manually Shifting Gears.....	133
What Is Autolock.....	56	Automatic Transmission Fluid Capacity	
Automatically Releasing the Electric		and Specification.....	322
Parking Brake.....	151	Automatic Transmission Position	
Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	247	Indicators.....	133
Automatic Crash Shutoff		Automatic Transmission Positions.....	132
Precautions.....	247	Drive (D).....	132
Re-Enabling Your Vehicle.....	247	Manual (M).....	133
What Is Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	247	Neutral (N).....	132
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	215	Park (P).....	132
Switching Automatic Emergency Braking		Reverse (R).....	132
On and Off.....	215	Sport (S).....	133
What Is Automatic Emergency		Automatic Transmission	
Braking.....	215	Precautions.....	132
Automatic Engine Stop.....	118	Auto Mode.....	95
How Does Automatic Engine Stop		Auto Mode Indicators.....	95
Work.....	118	Switching Auto Mode On and Off.....	95
Overriding Automatic Engine Stop.....	118	Switching Dual Mode On and Off.....	96
Switching Automatic Engine Stop On and		Auto-Start-Stop.....	122
Off.....	118	Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	123

Index

Auto-Start-Stop Indicators.....	122
Auto-Start-Stop Precautions.....	122
Auto-Start-Stop – Troubleshooting.....	123
Auto-Start-Stop – Frequently Asked Questions.....	124
Auto-Start-Stop – Information Messages.....	123
Autounlock.....	56
Autounlock Requirements.....	56
Switching Autounlock On and Off.....	56
What Is Autounlock.....	56
Auxiliary Switches.....	357
B	
Blind Spot Information System.....	205
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	207
Blind Spot Information System Indicators.....	206
Blind Spot Information System Limitations.....	205
Blind Spot Information System Precautions.....	205
Blind Spot Information System Requirements.....	205
Blind Spot Information System – Troubleshooting.....	207
Blind Spot Information System – Information Messages.....	207
Bluetooth®.....	347
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	256
Accessing the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	256
Identifying the Fuses in the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	257
Locating the Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	256
Bonnet Lock See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	260
Booster Seats.....	36
Brake Fluid Specification.....	148
Brake Over Accelerator.....	147
Brake Precautions.....	147
Brakes.....	147
Anti-Lock Braking System.....	147
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	148
Brakes – Troubleshooting.....	148
Brakes – Frequently Asked Questions.....	150
Brakes – Information Messages.....	149
Brakes – Warning Lamps.....	148
Breaking-In.....	243
C	
Canceling the Set Speed.....	161
Capacities and Specifications.....	316
Catalytic Converter.....	131
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	131
Catalytic Converter Precautions.....	131
Catalytic Converter – Troubleshooting.....	131
Catalytic Converter – Warning Lamps.....	131
Center Console.....	25
Locking the Center Console.....	114
Opening the Center Console.....	114
Center Display Limitations.....	337
Center Display Overview.....	337
Center Display Precautions.....	337
Changing a Flat Tire.....	310
Changing a Road Wheel.....	310
Changing the Engine Air Filter - 2.7L EcoBoost™.....	267
Changing the Fuel Filter.....	268
Changing the Remote Control Battery.....	48
Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot Name or Password.....	330
Charging a Device.....	108
Charging a Wireless Device.....	113
Checking MyKey System Status.....	54
Checking the Brake Fluid.....	147
Checking the Coolant.....	263
Checking the Tire Pressures.....	302
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	69
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	30
Locating the Child Restraint Lower Anchor Points.....	30
Locating the Child Restraint Top Tether Anchor Points.....	30
What Are the Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	30

Index

Child Restraints.....	31	Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	327
Child Restraint Position Information.....	31	Connected Vehicle Data.....	20
Child Restraints Recommendation.....	33	Connected Vehicle Limitations.....	327
Installing Child Restraints.....	34	Connected Vehicle Requirements.....	327
Child Safety.....	29	Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	328
Child Restraint Anchor Points.....	30	Connected Vehicle – Frequently Asked Questions.....	328
Child Restraints.....	31	Connecting a Bluetooth® Device.....	347
Installing Child Restraints.....	34	Connecting a Trailer.....	227
Child Safety Locks.....	37	Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	228
Child Safety Precautions.....	29	Tow Ball.....	225
Cleaning the Exterior.....	293	Connecting a Trailer Precautions.....	225
Cleaning Camera Lenses and Sensors.....	294	Connecting a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	228
Cleaning Chrome, Aluminium or Stainless Steel.....	293	Connecting a Trailer – Information Messages.....	228
Cleaning Headlamps and Rear Lamps.....	293	Connecting the Vehicle to a Mobile Network.....	327
Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	294	Connecting FordPass to the Modem.....	327
Cleaning the Convertible Top.....	294	Enabling and Disabling the Modem.....	327
Cleaning the Engine Compartment.....	294	What Is the Modem.....	327
Cleaning the Exterior Precautions.....	293	Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi Network.....	327
Cleaning the Hard Top.....	294	Connecting Your Phone.....	342
Cleaning the Underbody.....	295	Cooling System Capacity and Specification - 2.7L EcoBoost™.....	319
Cleaning Wheels.....	293	Crash and Breakdown Information.....	245
Cleaning Windows and Wiper Blades.....	293	Automatic Crash Shutoff.....	247
Cleaning the Interior.....	295	Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	245
Cleaning Carpets and Floor Mats.....	296	Post-Crash Alert System.....	246
Cleaning Displays and Screens.....	295	Post Impact Braking.....	247
Cleaning Fabric.....	295	Recovery Towing.....	248
Cleaning Leather.....	296	Creating a MyKey.....	53
Cleaning Plastic.....	295	Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	330
Cleaning Seatbelts.....	297	Cross Traffic Alert.....	208
Cleaning the Instrument Panel.....	295	Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	210
Cleaning Vinyl.....	296	Cross Traffic Alert Indicators.....	209
Clearing All MyKeys.....	54	Cross Traffic Alert Limitations.....	208
Climate Control.....	93	Cross Traffic Alert Precautions.....	208
Auto Mode.....	95	Cross Traffic Alert – Troubleshooting.....	210
Climate Control Hints.....	96	Cross Traffic Alert – Information Messages.....	210
Closing the Tailgate.....	61		
Closing the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	61		
Cold Weather Precautions.....	243		
Connected Navigation.....	351		
Connected Vehicle.....	327		
Connected Vehicle – Troubleshooting.....	328		

Index

Customer Information.....	360
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	361
Customizing the Instrument Cluster	
Display.....	91

D

Data Privacy.....	18
Declaration of Conformity.....	360
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio.....	335
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	
Limitations.....	335
Digital Audio Broadcasting Radio	
Settings.....	336
Selecting a Digital Audio Broadcasting	
Radio Station.....	335
Switching Service Linking On and	
Off.....	335
What Is Digital Audio Broadcasting	
Radio.....	335
What Is Service Linking.....	335
Directing the Flow of Air.....	94
Distance Indication.....	214
Distance Indication Indicator.....	215
Switching Distance Indication On and	
Off.....	215
What Is Distance Indication.....	214
Doors and Locks.....	56
Autolock.....	56
Autounlock.....	56
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	57
Mislock.....	57
Operating the Doors From Inside Your	
Vehicle.....	56
Operating the Doors From Outside Your	
Vehicle.....	56
Doors and Locks – Troubleshooting.....	57
Doors and Locks – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	58
Doors and Locks – Information	
Messages.....	57
Doors and Locks – Warning Lamps.....	57
Drive Belt Routing.....	275
Driver Alert.....	218
Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	219
Driver Alert Indicators.....	219
Driver Alert Limitations.....	218
Driver Alert Precautions.....	218

Driver Alert – Troubleshooting.....	219
Driver Alert – Information Messages.....	219
Driving Economically.....	243
Driving Hints.....	235
Off-Road Driving.....	235

E

Electric Parking Brake Audible	
Warning.....	152
Electric Parking Brake.....	151
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	152
Electric Parking Brake –	
Troubleshooting.....	152
Electric Parking Brake – Information	
Messages.....	153
Electric Parking Brake – Warning	
Lamps.....	152
Electric Power Steering.....	170
Electric Power Steering Precautions.....	170
How Does Electric Power Steering	
Work.....	170
Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	428
Electronic Locking Differential.....	143
Electronic Locking Differential –	
Troubleshooting.....	145
Electronic Locking Differential	
Indicators.....	144
Electronic Locking Differential –	
Troubleshooting.....	145
Electronic Locking Differential –	
Information Messages.....	145
Emergency Towing.....	251
Enabling Apps on an Android	
Device.....	348
Enabling Apps on an iOS Device.....	348
End User License Agreement.....	402
Engine Coolant Temperature	
Gauge.....	85
Engine Oil Capacity and Specification -	
2.7L EcoBoost™.....	319
Engine Oil.....	262
Adding Engine Oil.....	262
Checking the Engine Oil Level.....	262
Engine Oil Capacity and	
Specification.....	263
Engine Oil Dipstick Overview.....	262

Index

Resetting the Intelligent Oil Life Monitor.....	263
Engine Specifications - 2.7L EcoBoost™.....	316
Environment.....	22
Evasive Steering Assist.....	215
Evasive Steering Assist Limitations.....	216
Switching Evasive Steering Assist On and Off.....	216
What Is Evasive Steering Assist.....	215
Event Data.....	19
Exterior Bulbs.....	274
Exterior Bulb Specification Chart.....	274
Exterior Lamps.....	73
Exterior Lamps On Audible Warning.....	74
Switching the Daytime Running Lamps On and Off.....	74
Using the Front Fog Lamps.....	74
Using the Rear Fog Lamps.....	74
Using the Turn Signal Lamps.....	73
Exterior Lighting Control.....	72
Exterior Lighting.....	72
Adaptive Front Lighting.....	77
Autolamps.....	73
Automatic High Beam Control.....	74
Automatic High Beam Control – Troubleshooting.....	76
Exterior Lamps.....	73
Headlamps.....	72
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	72
Exterior Mirrors.....	83
F	
Fastening and Unfastening the Seatbelts.....	38
Feature Bar.....	338
Flat Tire	
See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	310
Floor Mats.....	243
Folding the Exterior Mirrors.....	83
Ford Assistant.....	340
Ford Assistant – Frequently Asked Questions.....	340
Ford Assistant Settings.....	340
Using Ford Assistant.....	340
Ford Power-Up	
See: Software Update Settings.....	354
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	354
Four-Wheel Drive.....	135
Four-Wheel Drive Modes.....	139
Four-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	140
Four-Wheel Drive Indicators.....	140
Four-Wheel Drive Limitations.....	136
Four-Wheel Drive Modes.....	139
Four-Wheel Drive Auto.....	139
Four-Wheel Drive High.....	139
Four-Wheel Drive Low.....	140
Two-Wheel Drive High.....	139
Four-Wheel Drive Precautions.....	135
Four-Wheel Drive – Troubleshooting.....	140
Four-Wheel Drive – Information Messages.....	141
Four-Wheel Drive – Warning Lamps.....	140
Front Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	323
Front Exterior.....	27
Front Parking Aid.....	174
Front Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	175
Front Parking Aid Limitations.....	175
Locating the Front Parking Aid Sensors.....	175
What Is the Front Parking Aid.....	174
Front Passenger Sensing System.....	44
Front Passenger Sensing System Indicators.....	46
Front Passenger Sensing System Precautions.....	46
How Does the Front Passenger Sensing System Work.....	44
What Is the Front Passenger Sensing System.....	44
Front Seat Precautions.....	99
Front Seats.....	99
Heated Seats.....	102
Power Seats.....	100
Fuel and Refueling.....	125
Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	130
Fuel Quality.....	125
Refueling.....	127
Running Out of Fuel.....	126
Fuel and Refueling Precautions.....	125

Index

Fuel and Refueling – Troubleshooting.....	130
Fuel and Refueling – Information Messages.....	130
Fuel and Refueling – Warning Lamps.....	130
Fuel Consumption Figures.....	318
Fuel Consumption Regulations.....	129
Fuel Gauge.....	84
Fuel Gauge Limitations.....	85
Locating the Fuel Filler Door.....	85
What Is Distance to Empty.....	85
What Is the Fuel Gauge.....	84
What Is the Low Fuel Reminder.....	85
Fuel Quality.....	125
Selecting the Correct Fuel.....	125
Fuel Tank Capacity.....	129
Fuse Precautions.....	252
Fuses.....	252
Body Control Module Fuse Box.....	256
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	259
Under Hood Fuse Box.....	252
Fuses – Troubleshooting.....	259
Fuses – Frequently Asked Questions.....	259
G	
G.O.A.T. Mode Control.....	191
G.O.A.T. Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	195
G.O.A.T. Modes.....	192
G.O.A.T. Mode Control – Troubleshooting.....	195
G.O.A.T. Mode Control – Frequently Asked Questions.....	197
G.O.A.T. Mode Control – Information Messages.....	195
G.O.A.T. Mode Control – Warning Lamps.....	195
G.O.A.T. Modes.....	192
Baja.....	192
Eco.....	192
Mud/Ruts.....	192
Normal.....	193
Rock Crawl.....	193
Sand.....	193
Slippery.....	194
Sport.....	194
Glasses Holder.....	115
Locating the Glasses Holder.....	115
Global Opening.....	80
Switching Global Opening On and Off.....	81
Using Global Opening.....	80
What Is Global Opening.....	80
Glove Compartment.....	114
Locking the Glove Compartment.....	114
Opening the Glove Compartment.....	114
H	
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	272
Headlamps.....	72
Headlamp Indicators.....	72
Using the High Beam Headlamps.....	72
Headlamps – Troubleshooting.....	72
Headlamps – Frequently Asked Questions.....	72
Heated Seats.....	102
Heated Seat Precautions.....	102
Switching the Heated Seats On and Off.....	102
Heating	
See: Climate Control.....	93
Hill Start Assist.....	154
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	154
Hill Start Assist Precautions.....	154
Hill Start Assist – Troubleshooting.....	154
Hill Start Assist – Information Messages.....	154
Hood Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	260
Horn.....	67
How Does Adaptive Cruise Control Work.....	183
How Does Blind Spot Information System Work.....	205
How Does Cross Traffic Alert Work.....	208
How Does Driver Alert Work.....	218
How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement.....	135
How Does Four-Wheel Drive Work - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode.....	135
How Does G.O.A.T. Mode Control Work.....	191

Index

How Does Hill Start Assist Work.....	154
How Does Pre-Collision Assist Work.....	211
How Does Stability Control Work.....	157
How Does the 360 Degree Camera Work.....	180
How Does the Lane Keeping System Work.....	198
How Does the Rear Occupant Alert System Work.....	106
How Does the Safety Canopy™ Work.....	42
How Does Traction Control Work.....	155
How Does Trailer Sway Control Work.....	234
How Do the Front Airbags Work.....	41
How Do the Side Airbags Work.....	41
I	
Identifying Fuse Types.....	259
Identifying the Audio Unit.....	332
Identifying the Auxiliary Switch Wiring.....	359
Identifying the Climate Control Unit.....	93
Inflating the Tires.....	302
Information On Demand Screen.....	338
Inspecting the Tire for Damage.....	304
Inspecting the Tire for Wear.....	304
Inspecting the Wheel Valve Stems.....	305
Installing Child Restraints.....	34
Using Seatbelts.....	34
Instrument Cluster Display.....	90
Personalized Settings.....	91
Trip Computer.....	91
Instrument Cluster Display Main Menu.....	90
Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	87
Instrument Cluster.....	84
Fuel Gauge.....	84
Instrument Cluster Overview - Vehicles With: 8 Inch Screen.....	84
Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	85
Instrument Panel.....	24
Interior Air Quality.....	98
Interior Bulbs.....	274
Interior Bulb Specification Chart.....	274
Interior Lamp Function.....	78
Switching the Interior Lamp Function On and Off.....	78
What Is the Interior Lamp Function.....	78
Interior Lighting.....	78
Ambient Lighting.....	79
Interior Lamp Function.....	78
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	79
Interior Lighting – Troubleshooting.....	79
Interior Lighting – Frequently Asked Questions.....	79
Interior Mirror.....	82
Auto-Dimming Interior Mirror.....	82
Interior Mirror Precautions.....	82
Introduction.....	13
J	
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	245
Jump Starting Precautions.....	245
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	245
Preparing the Vehicle.....	245
K	
Keyless Entry.....	59
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	60
Keyless Entry Limitations.....	59
Keyless Entry Settings.....	59
Keyless Entry – Troubleshooting.....	60
Keyless Entry – Frequently Asked Questions.....	60
Keys and Remote Controls.....	47
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	51
Keys and Remote Controls – Troubleshooting.....	51
Keys and Remote Controls – Information Messages.....	51
L	
Lane Keeping System Indicators.....	201
Lane Keeping System.....	198
Aid Mode.....	200
Alert and Aid Mode.....	200
Alert Mode.....	199

Index

Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	202
Lane Keeping System Limitations.....	198
Lane Keeping System Precautions.....	198
Lane Keeping System – Troubleshooting.....	202
Lane Keeping System – Frequently Asked Questions.....	203
Lane Keeping System – Information Messages.....	202
Launching or Retrieving a Boat or Personal Watercraft.....	230
Live Traffic.....	351
Switching Live Traffic On and Off.....	351
What Is Live Traffic.....	351
Load Carrying.....	220
Roof Rack.....	220
Load Carrying Precautions.....	220
Locating the 360 Degree Cameras.....	181
Locating the Auxiliary Switches.....	357
Locating the Auxiliary Switch Wiring.....	357
Locating the Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	206
Locating the Brake Fluid Reservoir.....	147
Locating the Cross Traffic Alert Sensors.....	209
Locating the Fuel Filler Funnel.....	126
Locating the Power Outlets.....	110
Locating the Pre-Collision Assist Sensors.....	213
Locating the Rear View Camera.....	177
Locating the Tire label.....	300
Locating the USB Ports.....	108
Locating the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	113
Locating Your Vehicle.....	48
Locking and Unlocking the Tailgate.....	61
Locking the Rear Window Controls.....	81
M	
Maintenance.....	260
12V Battery.....	268
12V Battery – Troubleshooting.....	271
Engine Oil.....	262
Exterior Bulbs.....	274
Interior Bulbs.....	274
Maintenance Precautions.....	260
Making and Receiving a Phone Call.....	344
Manually Releasing the Electric Parking Brake.....	151
Manually Shifting Gears.....	133
Shifting Using the Buttons on the Selector Lever.....	133
Manual Seats.....	104
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	104
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	105
Head Restraint Components.....	104
Installing the Head Restraint.....	104
Removing the Head Restraint.....	104
Map Pocket.....	115
Locating the Map Pocket.....	115
Mislock.....	57
Mislock Limitations.....	57
Switching Mislock On and Off.....	57
What Is Mislock.....	57
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	402
Mobile Device Data.....	20
Muting the Audio.....	333
MyKey Settings.....	52
Configurable MyKey Settings.....	52
Non-Configurable MyKey Settings.....	52
MyKey – Troubleshooting.....	54
MyKey – Frequently Asked Questions.....	55
MyKey – Information Messages.....	54
MyKey™.....	52
MyKey Settings.....	52
MyKey – Troubleshooting.....	54
N	
Navigation Map Updates.....	351
Navigation.....	351
Adjusting the Map.....	351
Live Traffic.....	351
Route Guidance.....	353
Setting a Destination.....	352
Waypoints.....	352
O	
Off-Road Driving.....	235
After Driving Your Vehicle Off-Road.....	242

Index

Basic Off-Road Driving Techniques.....	235
Driving Off-Road.....	236
Driving Through Water Limitations.....	240
Driving Your Vehicle at High Speeds.....	240
Off-Road Driving Aids.....	240
Off-Road Driving Precautions.....	235
What Is Off-Road Driving.....	235
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	260
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	80
Opening the Tailgate.....	61
Opening the Tailgate From Outside Your Vehicle.....	61
Operating the Doors From Inside Your Vehicle.....	56
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Central Locking.....	56
Operating the Doors From Outside Your Vehicle.....	56
Unlocking and Locking the Doors Using the Remote Control.....	56
OTA	
See: Software Update Settings.....	354
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	354
Overriding the Set Speed.....	188
Over the air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	354
Over-the-air	
See: Software Update Settings.....	354
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	354
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	354
P	
Parking Aid Indicators.....	176
Parking Aid Precautions.....	173
Parking Aids.....	173
Front Parking Aid.....	174
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	176
Rear Parking Aid.....	174
Parking Aids – Troubleshooting.....	176
Parking Aids – Information Messages.....	176
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	65
How Does the Passive Anti-Theft System Work.....	65
What Is the Passive Anti-Theft System.....	65
Performing a System Reset.....	356
Personalized Settings.....	91
Changing the Instrument Cluster Display Language.....	91
Changing the Measurement Unit.....	91
Changing the Temperature Unit.....	92
Changing the Tire Pressure Unit.....	92
Phone Menu.....	342
Phone.....	342
Phone Precautions.....	342
Playing Media Using Bluetooth®.....	347
Playing Media Using the USB Port.....	108
Playing or Pausing the Audio Source.....	332
Post-Crash Alert System.....	246
How Does the Post-Crash Alert System Work.....	247
Post-Crash Alert System Limitations.....	247
Switching the Post-Crash Alert System Off.....	247
What Is the Post-Crash Alert System.....	246
Post Impact Braking.....	247
How Does Post Impact Braking Work.....	247
Overriding Post Impact Braking.....	247
Post Impact Braking Indicators.....	247
Post Impact Braking Limitations.....	247
Power Outlet Indicators.....	110
Power Outlet.....	110
Power Outlet Precautions.....	110
Power Seats.....	100
Adjusting the Head Restraint.....	100
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	102
Adjusting the Seat Backrest.....	101
Adjusting the Seat Cushion.....	101
Adjusting the Seat Height.....	102
Head Restraint Components.....	100
Installing the Head Restraint.....	101
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	101
Removing the Head Restraint.....	101
Pre-Collision Assist Limitations.....	212
Pre-Collision Assist Precautions.....	211
Pre-Collision Assist.....	211
Automatic Emergency Braking.....	215
Distance Indication.....	214
Evasive Steering Assist.....	215
Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	216

Index

Pre-Collision Assist – Troubleshooting.....	216
Pre-Collision Assist – Frequently Asked Questions.....	217
Pre-Collision Assist – Information Messages.....	216
Pre-Collision Assist – Warning Lamps.....	216
Preparing Your Vehicle for Storage.....	298
Programming a MyKey.....	54
Programming the Remote Control.....	50
Protecting the Environment.....	22
Puncture See: Changing a Flat Tire.....	310
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	116
R	
Radio Frequency Certification Labels.....	361
Blind Spot Information System Sensors.....	361
Body Control Module.....	367
Cruise Control Module.....	370
Keys and Remote Controls.....	373
Radio Transceiver Module.....	379
SYNC.....	382
Telematics Control Unit.....	387
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Sensors.....	389
Wireless Accessory Charging Module.....	394
REACH.....	360
Rear Axle Fluid Capacity and Specification.....	324
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	224
Locating the Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	224
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point Load Capacities.....	224
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Point Precautions.....	224
Rear Cargo Area.....	224
Rear Cargo Area Anchor Points.....	224
Rear Exterior.....	28
Rear Occupant Alert System Audible Warnings.....	107
Rear Occupant Alert System Indicators.....	107
Rear Occupant Alert System Limitations.....	106
Rear Occupant Alert System Precautions.....	106
Rear Occupant Alert System.....	106
Rear Parking Aid.....	174
Locating the Rear Parking Aid Sensors.....	174
Rear Parking Aid Audible Warnings.....	174
Rear Parking Aid Limitations.....	174
What is the Rear Parking Aid.....	174
Rear Seats.....	104
Manual Seats.....	104
Rear View Camera Guide Lines.....	177
Rear View Camera Object Distance Indicators.....	178
Rear View Camera Precautions.....	177
Rear View Camera.....	177
Rear View Camera Settings.....	178
Rear View Camera Settings.....	178
Switching Rear View Camera Delay On and Off.....	179
Zooming the Rear View Camera In and Out.....	178
Rebooting the Center Display.....	339
Recovery Towing.....	248
Accessing the Front Towing Point.....	248
Accessing the Rear Towing Point.....	249
Refueling.....	127
Refueling System Overview.....	127
Refueling Your Vehicle.....	127
Releasing the Electric Parking Brake if the Vehicle Battery Has Run Out of Charge.....	152
Remote Control Limitations.....	47
Removable Doors.....	277
Doors and Locks Audible Warnings.....	281
Removing and Installing the Doors.....	277
Removable Fenders.....	285
Removable Fender Precautions.....	285
Removing the Fender Flares.....	285
Removable Hard Top.....	284
Removing and Installing the Hard Top.....	284
Removable Roof Panels.....	282
Removable Roof Panel Precautions.....	282

Index

Removing and Installing the Center Roof Panel.....	283
Removing and Installing the Front Roof Panel.....	282
Removing and Installing the Rear Roof Panel.....	283
Removable Vehicle Components.....	276
Removable Doors.....	277
Removable Fenders.....	285
Removable Hard Top.....	284
Removable Roof Panels.....	282
Removable Windows.....	276
Removable Windows.....	276
Removable Windows Precautions.....	276
Removing and Installing the Rear Quarter Windows.....	276
Removing the Key Blade.....	47
Removing Your Vehicle From Storage.....	299
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	297
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	401
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	49
Replacing the Cabin Air Filter.....	98
Replacing the Front Wiper Blades.....	69
Replacing the Rear Wiper Blades.....	70
Restarting the Engine.....	122
Resuming the Set Speed.....	188
Reverse Wipe.....	68
Reverse Wipe Settings.....	68
What Is Reverse Wipe.....	68
Rollover Warning.....	360
Roof Rack.....	220
Adjusting a Roof Rack Crossbar.....	222
Removing and Installing the Roof Rack.....	221
Roof Rack Load Capacities.....	223
Roof Rack Precautions.....	220
Route Guidance.....	353
Adjusting the Guidance Prompt Volume.....	353
Canceling Route Guidance.....	353
Repeating an Instruction.....	353
Route Guidance Settings.....	353
Running-In See: Breaking-In.....	243
Running Out of Fuel.....	126
Adding Fuel From a Portable Fuel Container.....	126
Filling a Portable Fuel Container.....	126
S	
Seatbelt Precautions.....	38
Seatbelt Reminder.....	39
How Does the Seatbelt Reminder Work.....	39
Seatbelt Reminder Audible Warnings.....	40
Seatbelt Reminder Indicators.....	39
Switching the Seatbelt Reminder On and Off.....	40
Seatbelts.....	38
Automatic Locking Mode.....	38
Seatbelt Reminder.....	39
Security.....	65
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	65
Security – Troubleshooting.....	65
Security – Troubleshooting.....	65
Security – Frequently Asked Questions.....	66
Security – Information Messages.....	65
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - 4x4 with Part Time Engagement.....	137
Selecting a Four-Wheel Drive Mode - Advanced 4x4 with 4A Mode.....	138
Selecting a G.O.A.T. Mode.....	191
Selecting the Audio Source.....	332
Sending and Receiving a Text Message.....	345
Service Data.....	19
Setting a Destination.....	352
Setting a Destination Using a Point of Interest.....	352
Setting a Destination Using a Predictive Destination.....	352
Setting a Destination Using a Recent Destination.....	352
Setting a Destination Using a Saved Destination.....	352
Setting a Destination Using the Map Screen.....	352
Setting a Destination Using the Text Entry Screen.....	352
Setting a Memory Preset.....	333

Index

Settings Data.....	20
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Gap.....	187
Setting the Adaptive Cruise Control Speed.....	186
Setting the Blower Motor Speed.....	94
Setting the Clock and Date.....	334
Setting the Temperature.....	94
Setting the Trail Control Speed.....	160
Shifting Your Vehicle Into Gear.....	133
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	99
Slide Out Tailgate.....	63
Software Update Indicators.....	355
Software Update Settings.....	354
Software Update See: Software Update Settings.....	354
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	354
Sounding the Panic Alarm.....	47
Speedometer.....	84
Stability Control Indicator.....	159
Stability Control.....	157
Stabilizer Bar Disconnect Indicators.....	168
Stabilizer Bar Disconnect Precautions.....	167
Stabilizer Bar Disconnect.....	167
Stabilizer Bar Disconnect – Troubleshooting.....	168
Stabilizer Bar Disconnect – Troubleshooting.....	168
Stabilizer Bar Disconnect – Frequently Asked Questions.....	169
Stabilizer Bar Disconnect – Information Messages.....	168
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Precautions.....	116
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	116
Automatic Engine Stop.....	118
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	119
Starting the Engine.....	117
Stopping the Engine.....	117
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Troubleshooting.....	119
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Frequently Asked Questions.....	121
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Information Messages.....	120
Starting and Stopping the Engine – Warning Lamps.....	119
Starting the Engine.....	117
Restarting the Engine After Stopping it.....	117
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	117
Status Bar.....	337
Steering.....	170
Electric Power Steering.....	170
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	170
Steering – Troubleshooting.....	170
Steering – Frequently Asked Questions.....	172
Steering – Information Messages.....	171
Steering – Warning Indicators.....	170
Steering Wheel.....	23
Stopping the Engine.....	122
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Moving.....	118
Stopping the Engine When Your Vehicle is Stationary.....	117
Storage.....	114
Center Console.....	114
Glasses Holder.....	115
Glove Compartment.....	114
Map Pocket.....	115
Under Floor Storage.....	115
Storing the Doors and the Roof Panels.....	286
Storing Your Vehicle.....	298
Switching Adaptive Cruise Control On and Off.....	186
Switching Air Conditioning On and Off.....	93
Switching All of the Interior Lamps On and Off.....	78
Switching Android Auto On and Off.....	349
Switching Apple CarPlay On and Off.....	349
Switching Auto-Start-Stop On and Off.....	122
Switching Blind Spot Information System On and Off.....	206
Switching Climate Control On and Off.....	93
Switching Cross Traffic Alert On and Off.....	208

Index

Switching Driver Alert On and Off.....	219
Switching Four-Wheel Drive On and Off.....	137
Switching From Adaptive Cruise Control to Cruise Control.....	189
Switching Hill Start Assist On and Off.....	154
Switching Maximum Cooling On and Off.....	93
Switching Maximum Defrost On and Off.....	93
Switching Parking Aid On and Off.....	173
Switching Pre-Collision Assist On and Off.....	212
Switching Rear Occupant Alert System On and Off.....	106
Switching Recirculated Air On and Off.....	93
Switching Repeat Mode On and Off.....	333
Switching Shuffle Mode On and Off.....	333
Switching Stability Control On and Off.....	158
Switching Text Message Notification On and Off.....	346
Switching the Audio Unit On and Off.....	332
Switching the Display On and Off.....	335
Switching the Electronic Locking Differential On and Off.....	143
Switching the Front Interior Lamps On and Off.....	78
Switching the Hazard Flashers On and Off.....	245
Switching the Heated Mirrors On and Off.....	94
Switching the Heated Rear Window On and Off.....	94
Switching the Heated Steering Wheel On and Off.....	67
Switching the Lane Keeping System Mode.....	199
Switching the Lane Keeping System On and Off.....	199
Switching the Rear Interior Lamps On and Off.....	78
Switching the Rear Window Wiper On and Off.....	68
Switching the Stabilizer Bar Disconnect On and Off.....	167
Switching Traction Control On and Off.....	155
Switching Trail Control On and Off.....	160
Switching Trailer Sway Control On and Off.....	234
Switching Trail Turn Assist On and Off.....	165
Symbols Glossary.....	15
Symbols Used on Your Vehicle.....	15
System Update See: Software Update Settings.....	354
See: Vehicle Software Updates.....	354
T	
Tachometer.....	84
Tailgate Precautions.....	61
Tailgate.....	61
Closing the Tailgate.....	61
Opening the Tailgate.....	61
Tailgate – Troubleshooting.....	63
Tailgate – Troubleshooting.....	63
Tailgate – Information Messages.....	64
Tailgate – Warning Lamps.....	63
Technical Specifications See: Capacities and Specifications.....	316
Third Party Software Copyright Acknowledgment.....	360
Tire Care.....	302
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Limitations.....	307
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Precautions.....	307
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	307
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	308
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Troubleshooting.....	308
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Information Messages.....	309
Tire Pressure Monitoring System – Warning Lamps.....	308
Tire Pressure Specifications.....	303
Tire Rotation.....	305

Index

Tow Ball.....	225	Trail One Pedal Drive –	
Attaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	226	Troubleshooting.....	163
Detaching the Tow Ball Arm.....	225	Trail One Pedal Drive – Information	
Tow Ball Precautions.....	225	Messages.....	163
Towing a Trailer Limitations.....	229	Trail Turn Assist Indicators.....	165
Towing a Trailer Precautions.....	229	Trail Turn Assist Limitations.....	165
Towing a Trailer.....	229	Trail Turn Assist Precautions.....	165
Towing a Trailer – Troubleshooting.....	233	Trail Turn Assist.....	165
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	231	Trail Turn Assist – Troubleshooting.....	166
Towing a Trailer –		Trail Turn Assist –	
Troubleshooting.....	233	Troubleshooting.....	166
Towing a Trailer – Information		Trail Turn Assist – Frequently Asked	
Messages.....	233	Questions.....	166
Towing Weights and Dimensions.....	231	Trail Turn Assist – Information	
Tow Bar Dimensions.....	231	Messages.....	166
What Is the Maximum Loaded Trailer		Transfer Case Fluid Capacity and	
Weight.....	233	Specification.....	140
Towing Your Vehicle Precautions.....	251	Transmission Fluid Temperature	
Towing Your Vehicle.....	251	Gauge.....	85
Traction Control Indicator.....	155	Transporting the Vehicle.....	250
Traction Control.....	155	Trip Computer.....	91
Traction Control – Troubleshooting.....	156	Accessing the Trip Computer.....	91
Traction Control –		Resetting the Individual Trip Values.....	91
Troubleshooting.....	156	Resetting the Trip Computer.....	91
Traction Control – Information		Tyre Pressure Specifications	
Messages.....	156	See: Tire Pressure Specifications.....	303
Trail Control Indicators.....	161		
Trail Control Limitations.....	160	U	
Trail Control.....	160	Under Floor Storage.....	115
Trail Control – Troubleshooting.....	164	Locating the Luggage Compartment Under	
Trail One Pedal Drive.....	161	Floor Storage.....	115
Trail One Pedal Drive –		Under Hood Fuse Box.....	252
Troubleshooting.....	163	Accessing the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	252
Trail Control – Troubleshooting.....	164	Identifying the Fuses in the Under Hood	
Trail Control – Information		Fuse Box.....	253
Messages.....	164	Locating the Under Hood Fuse Box.....	252
Trailer Sway Control Precautions.....	234	Under Hood Overview - 2.7L	
Trailer Sway Control.....	234	EcoBoost™.....	261
Trailer Towing Hints.....	229	USB Ports.....	108
Trail One Pedal Drive.....	161	Using Keyless Entry.....	59
Switching Trail One Pedal Drive On and		Using Snow Chains.....	300
Off.....	162	Using the Instrument Cluster Display	
Trail One Pedal Drive Indicators.....	162	Controls.....	90
Trail One Pedal Drive Limitations.....	161	Using the Remote Control.....	47
Trail One Pedal Drive Precautions.....	161	Using This Publication.....	14
What Is Trail One Pedal Drive.....	161		

Index

V

Vehicle Care.....	293
Cleaning the Exterior.....	293
Cleaning the Interior.....	295
Vehicle Dimensions.....	317
Vehicle Identification Number.....	325
Locating the Vehicle Identification Number.....	325
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	325
Locating the Vehicle Identification Plate.....	325
Vehicle Identification Plate Overview.....	325
Vehicle Identification.....	325
Vehicle Identification Number.....	325
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	325
Vehicle Interior.....	26
Vehicle Software Updates.....	354
Vehicle System Reset.....	356
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	331
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Frequently Asked Questions.....	331
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	330
Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot – Troubleshooting.....	331
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	93
Viewing the Tire Pressures.....	307
Visual Search.....	23
Voice Interaction.....	340
Ford Assistant.....	340

W

Washer Fluid Specification.....	321
Washers.....	70
Adding Washer Fluid.....	71
Switching the Courtesy Wipe On and Off.....	71
Using the Rear Window Washer.....	71
Using the Windshield Washer.....	70
Washer Fluid Specification.....	71
Washer Precautions.....	70
Washers	
See: Wipers and Washers.....	68
Waxing Your Vehicle.....	297

Waypoints.....	352
Adding a Waypoint.....	352
Editing Waypoints.....	352
What Are the Auxiliary Switches.....	357
What Are the Instrument Cluster Indicators.....	87
What Are the Instrument Cluster Warning Lamps.....	85
What Is a Connected Vehicle.....	327
What Is Auto-Start-Stop.....	122
What Is Blind Spot Information System.....	205
What Is Cross Traffic Alert.....	208
What Is Driver Alert.....	218
What Is G.O.A.T. Mode Control.....	191
What Is Hill Start Assist.....	154
What Is Keyless Entry.....	59
What Is MyKey.....	52
What Is Pre-Collision Assist.....	211
What Is the 360 Degree Camera.....	180
What Is the Cabin Air Filter.....	98
What Is the Catalytic Converter.....	131
What Is the Electric Parking Brake.....	151
What Is the Electronic Locking Differential.....	143
What Is the Information Bar.....	85
What Is the Lane Keeping System.....	198
What Is the Power Outlet.....	110
What is the Rear Occupant Alert System.....	106
What Is the Rear View Camera.....	177
What Is the Stabilizer Bar Disconnect.....	167
What Is the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	307
What Is the Wireless Accessory Charger.....	113
What Is Traction Control.....	155
What Is Trail Control.....	160
What Is Trail Turn Assist.....	165
Wheel and Tire Information.....	300
Wheel Nuts.....	315

Index

Wi Fi	
See: Changing the Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot	
Name or Password.....	330
See: Connecting the Vehicle to a Wi-Fi	
Network.....	327
See: Creating a Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	330
See: Vehicle Wi-Fi Hotspot.....	330
Window Bounce-Back.....	81
Overriding Window Bounce-Back.....	81
What Is Window Bounce-Back.....	81
Windows.....	80
Global Opening.....	80
Window Bounce-Back.....	81
Wipers and Washers –	
Troubleshooting.....	71
Wipers and Washers – Frequently Asked	
Questions.....	71
Wipers and Washers – Warning	
Lamps.....	71
Wipers and Washers.....	68
Reverse Wipe.....	68
Washers.....	70
Wipers.....	68
Wipers and Washers –	
Troubleshooting.....	71
Wipers.....	68
Switching Windshield Wipers On and	
Off.....	68
Wiper Precautions.....	68
Wireless Accessory Charger	
Precautions.....	113
Wireless Accessory Charger.....	113

